

**[Implementing a Next Generation Stock Assessment
Enterprise: An Update to NOAA Fisheries' Stock Assessment
Improvement Plan]**

DRAFT DOCUMENT FOR
DISCUSSION PURPOSES

1

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE



2

3 REPORT NUMBER #####

4 NATIONAL OCEANIC AND ATMOSPHERIC ADMINISTRATION

5 SILVER SPRING, MD 20910

6

7 **IMPLEMENTING A NEXT GENERATION STOCK ASSESSMENT**

8 **ENTERPRISE**

9 *AN UPDATE TO NOAA FISHERIES' STOCK ASSESSMENT IMPROVEMENT PLAN*

10

11 EDITED BY ...

12 NATIONAL MARINE FISHERIES SERVICE, OFFICE OF SCIENCE AND TECHNOLOGY

13 SILVER SPRING, MD 20910

14

15 DATE

16

17

18

19 **Executive Summary**

20 **Section I: Introduction to the Stock Assessment Improvement Plan**

21 **Ch. 1: Background and Purpose**

- 22 1.1 What is a stock assessment?
- 23 1.2 What is the context for stock assessments?
- 24 1.3 How are stock assessments conducted?
- 25 1.4 Why should stock assessments be improved?
- 26 1.5 What is in this updated SAIP?

27

28 **Ch. 2: Accomplishments of NOAA Fisheries' Stock Assessment Enterprise**

- 29 2.1. The 2001 Stock Assessment Improvement Plan
- 30 2.2. Improvements and impacts of NOAA's stock assessments in the 21st century
- 31 2.3. Summary

32

33 **Section II: The Current State of NOAA Fisheries' Stock Assessment Enterprise**

34 **Ch. 3: Overview of NOAA Fisheries' Stock Assessment Programs**

35 **Ch. 4: Data Collection to Support Stock Assessments**

- 36 4.1. Data types and collection methods
 - 37 4.1.1. Catch data
 - 38 4.1.2. Abundance data
 - 39 4.1.3. Biological data
 - 40 4.1.4. Ecosystem data
- 41 4.2. Strengths and challenges

42

43 **Ch. 5: Analytical Tools**

- 44 5.1. Introduction
- 45 5.2.0. Preparing stock assessment input data
- 46 5.3. Stock assessment models
 - 47 5.3.1. Principles
 - 48 5.3.2. Outputs and uses
 - 49 5.3.3. Categories
 - 50 5.3.4. Application and choice
- 51 5.4. Assessment uncertainty and decision support
 - 52 5.4.1. Characterizing scientific uncertainty
 - 53 5.4.2. Decision support
- 54 5.5. Strengths and challenges

55
56
57
58
59
60
61
62
63
64
65
66
67
68
69
70
71
72
73
74
75
76
77
78
79
80
81
82
83
84
85
86
87
88
89
90
91
92
93
94
95

Ch. 6: Quality Assurance in the Stock Assessment Process

- 6.1. National guidance on science quality assurance
- 6.2. Overview of the stock assessment review process for fisheries management
- 6.3. Regional stock assessment review processes
 - 6.3.1. Southeast Data, Assessment, and Review (SEDAR)
 - 6.3.2. Stock Assessment Workshop/Stock Assessment Review Committee (SAW/SARC)
 - 6.3.3. Stock Assessment Review (STAR)
 - 6.3.4. Western Pacific Stock Assessment Review (WPSAR)
 - 6.3.5. North Pacific Stock Assessment Review Process
- 6.4. Quality assurance of stock assessments for partner organizations
- 6.5. Strengths and challenges

Section III: NOAA Fisheries' Next Generation Stock Assessment Enterprise

Ch. 7: An Introduction to the Future of NOAA Fisheries' Stock Assessments

- 7.1 Summary of challenges and the need for improvement
- 7.2 Holistic and ecosystem-linked stock assessments
- 7.3 Innovative science
- 7.4 Timely, efficient, and effective stock assessment processes

Ch. 8: Holistic and Ecosystem-Linked Stock Assessments

- 8.1 Introduction
- 8.2 Why stock assessments should be expanded
- 8.3 When to expand stock assessments
- 8.4 How to expand stock assessments
- 8.5 Multiple stocks in an ecosystem
- 8.6 Conclusions

Ch. 9: Innovative Science for Improving Stock Assessments

- 9.1 Introduction
- 9.2 Innovations in data collection and processing
 - 9.2.1 Fishery-independent data
 - 9.2.2 Fishery-dependent data
 - 9.2.3 New data types
 - 9.2.4 Advanced sampling technologies
 - 9.2.5 Improving data management, processing, and delivery
- 9.3 Innovations in stock assessment modeling
 - 9.3.1 Improved software and advanced models
 - 9.3.2 Using multiple models to generate advice
 - 9.3.3 Risk assessment for fisheries management decisions

96	9.3.4 Holistic stock assessment models
97	9.3.5 Expanding and improving process studies
98	9.4 Conclusions
99	
100	Ch. 10: An Efficient and Effective Stock Assessment Enterprise
101	10.1 Introduction
102	10.2 Classifying stock assessments
103	10.3 Prioritizing stock assessments
104	10.3.1 A national protocol for prioritizing stock assessments
105	10.3.2 Stock assessment targets—an expansion of the national prioritization protocol
106	10.4 Establishing a right-sized stock assessment enterprise
107	10.5 Standardized approaches
108	10.5.1 Stock assessment analytical tools
109	10.5.2 The stock assessment process
110	10.6 Conclusions
111	
112	<u>Section IV: Summary, Recommendations, and Implementation</u>
113	<u>Acronyms</u>
114	<u>Appendix A:</u>
115	

116 **Executive Summary**

117 This new Stock Assessment Improvement Plan (SAIP) describes the advancements that have been made
118 over the past 15 years under the direction of the 2001 SAIP. A key finding is that NOAA Fisheries has
119 operationalized and largely achieved the SAIP's original goal of "Tier II" assessment capability – full
120 assessments for all key stocks. The funding provided through the Expand Annual Stock Assessments
121 budget line, now ~\$70M, has supported growth of the research and the operational aspects of the stock
122 assessment enterprise. Coupled with the implementation of a stock assessment prioritization process,
123 NOAA Fisheries is now achieving a high tempo of high quality assessments across the country.

124
125 This new SAIP provides a strategic vision for enhancing the performance of NOAA Fisheries' stock
126 assessment enterprise to the next generation level and complements other strategic guidance efforts to
127 accomplish NOAA Fisheries' mission of sustainable fisheries through resource conservation and
128 management. The plan's four sections include: Introduction and Accomplishments; Current State; Next
129 Generation Stock Assessment (NGSA) Enterprise; and Summary, Recommendations, and
130 Implementation.

131 Introduction and Accomplishments - Stock assessments can be considered both a process and a product
132 that provide necessary information to fishery managers for implementing sustainable fisheries
133 management. Data collection and monitoring, assessment modeling, peer-review, and communicating
134 recommendations are all part of the stock assessment process that culminates in a stock assessment
135 report that provides scientific advice to fishery managers. Stock assessments deliver advice on
136 sustainable harvest policies, stock status relative to a harvest policy, and future catch levels, e.g. annual
137 catch limits that will implement the harvest policy. Assessment advice is developed in strong
138 coordination with the scientific and statistical committees of the fishery management councils. From
139 2001 to 2015, NOAA Fisheries expanded the capacity of each regional stock assessment program and
140 created several national programs such as the NOAA Fisheries Toolbox and Advanced Sampling
141 Technologies. Collectively, these investments increased the capacity for conducting stock assessments
142 from near 50 assessments conducted in 2001 to near 190 assessments in 2015, a 217% increase in
143 assessment output. Over this time period, NOAA Fisheries' assessments provided the information
144 required to reduce the number of stocks experiencing overfishing by 30% and reduce the number of
145 overfished stocks by 24%. Thus, the strategic direction provided by the 2001 SAIP helped NOAA
146 Fisheries' stock assessment enterprise play a major role in establishing sustainable U.S. fisheries over
147 the past 15 years.

148 Current Status - The second section of this new SAIP reviews the national stock assessment programs
149 (Chapter 3), data types and collection methods to support stock assessment (Chapter 4), analytical tools
150 used in stock assessment (Chapter 5), and quality assurance in the stock assessment process (Chapter 6).
151 Stock assessments rely on data in three major categories: catch, abundance, and biology. Information
152 to support contemporary stock assessments occurs through cooperative data collection from numerous

153 management organizations, academic institutions, and stakeholders. Data collected from commercial,
154 recreational, or other fisheries are considered fishery-dependent and include catch, effort, bycatch,
155 discards, and the biological characteristics of the catch. Scientific surveys are the main source of fishery-
156 independent abundance data. They use collection methods that are consistent over time and space and
157 consider the habitats and biological features of fish stocks in their natural environments. Additionally,
158 stock assessments can be informed or improved using other sources such as ecosystem and
159 environmental data. Assessment model complexity ranges from relatively simple, data-limited
160 approaches for the many minor stocks for which the only data source is fishery catch, to highly flexible
161 models termed integrated analysis, that are capable of simultaneously analyzing numerous data inputs,
162 including environmental and ecosystem drivers. All assessment efforts strive to characterize the
163 uncertainty in results such that precautionary management approaches can be implemented. The
164 combination of limited data, model uncertainty, and demand for regulatory advice creates a high public
165 profile for assessments. National guidance specifies that objective peer reviews of stock assessments
166 are an important criterion for determining that the best scientific information available is being used as
167 the basis for fishery management. Well established peer review processes are in place for each region
168 and national guidance provides sufficient flexibility for the science centers and the respective councils to
169 determine the appropriate scope for a stock assessment review.

170 Next Generation Stock Assessment (NGSA) Enterprise – This new SAIP provides an overview of the many
171 challenges currently facing the stock assessment enterprise, and some of the innovative research and
172 operations that will meet those challenges. One focus for improvement is to make the assessments
173 more holistic in scope. This means that more **ecosystem and socioeconomic factors** that affect
174 the dynamics of fish stocks and fisheries are directly taken into account, and more goals of fishery
175 management are taken into account in the evaluation of sustainable harvest policies. Such expansion
176 aligns with the “Tier III” goal of the 2001 SAIP and is now a principal goal of this new SAIP. This is
177 critically important as we see shifting fish distributions and changing productivity regimes in some
178 regions. Another focus is on **innovative technologies** to provide better data efficiently and quickly,
179 and to use these data to maximum advantage with advanced modeling methods. Sonars, robotic camera
180 systems, and automated image processing are among the many technologies being implemented.
181 Advanced modeling systems range from Management Strategy Evaluation simulation tools to more fully
182 investigate harvest policies, to spatial-temporal data assimilation models capable of more realistically
183 representing the complex mosaic of species distributions and impacts. The third focus for improvement
184 is in the **assessment process** itself so that NOAA Fisheries can efficiently update as many
185 assessments as needed and deliver these assessment results effectively to fishery managers and the
186 public. The goal being to achieve the best balance among the “4Ts” of throughput, timeliness,
187 thoroughness, and transparency.

188
189 Summary, Recommendations, and Implementation – The concluding section summarizes the major
190 recommendations that will achieve the NGSA enterprise. These are provided as goals, and are not
191 prioritized or associated with resource requirements or specific timelines. Rather, the items provide a

192 directional framework that NOAA Fisheries can use to ensure the quality and quantity of assessments
 193 that meet the growing demands of the fishery and management process.

Theme	Recommendation
Holistic & Ecosystem-Linked Assessment Paradigm	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • More and routine consideration of ecosystem, environmental and socioeconomic drivers in research to develop operational assessments.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Coordinate stock assessments results and the advice being provided to managers across stocks; consider broader ecosystem and fishing community factors in a more holistic evaluation of harvest control rules; improve communication of stock assessment issues and gaps to inter-disciplinary researchers.
Innovative Science for Data Collection & Analysis	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Maintain and improve fishery-independent data collection capabilities. Include studies to directly calibrate fish abundance from surveys. Adjust coverage for shifting species distributions. Expand broad spectrum collection of ecosystem and environmental data.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Maintain and improve fishery-dependent data collection including electronic monitoring; develop low-cost fish and environmental survey methods deployable from fishing vessels.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Utilize advanced technologies, such as sonar, robotic camera systems, automated image processing, e-DNA, and others to lower costs, reduce stock impacts, and streamline data collection.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Improve the assessment modeling approach with a focus on advanced statistical methods such as spatial-temporal data-assimilation, expanding assessment model scope and broader use of management strategy evaluation simulations, and improving characterization of uncertainty, including the use of model ensembles. Improve professionalism of the assessment model development process.
Timely, Efficient, and Effective Processes to Deliver Assessments	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Prioritize stock assessment activity through implementing the new assessment data classification system and gap analysis.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Establish timely and efficient assessment processes by separating research from operational assessments; streamlining the operational process; expanding scope and inclusivity of the research process; and establishing a timely and efficient degree of peer-review focused on relevant issues.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Maintain effective stock assessments with standardized approaches and improve communication of data needs and assessment results through stakeholder engagement; improve training of current and future assessment scientists and improve opportunities for assessment scientists to engage in research.

195

196

197

198

199

200

201

202

203

SECTION I. INTRODUCTION TO THE STOCK ASSESSMENT IMPROVEMENT PLAN

204 Chapter 1—Background and Purpose

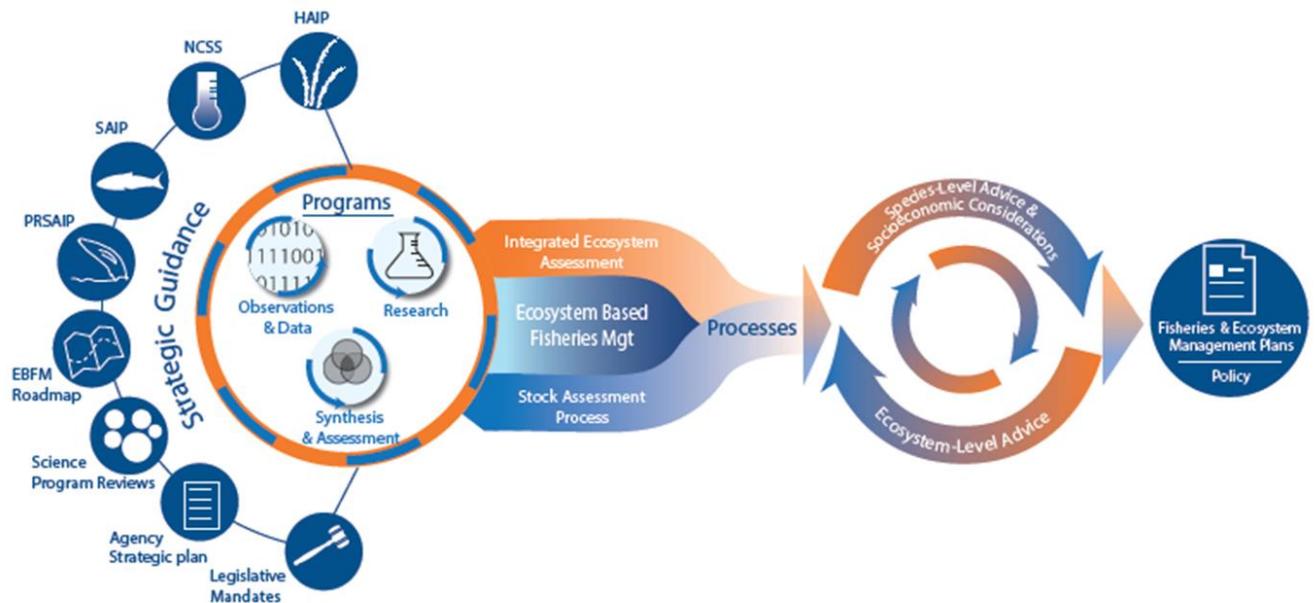
205 Chapter highlights:

- 206 • **This Stock Assessment Improvement Plan (SAIP) describes a vision for a Next Generation Stock**
207 **Assessment Enterprise (NGSA) that improves timeliness and efficiency of assessments,**
208 **prioritizes work, expands the scope of assessments, and uses innovative technologies and**
209 **techniques to conduct assessments.**
- 210 • **Adaptive strategies need to be incorporated into the stock assessment process to account for**
211 **changing ecosystems and a growing demand for assessments.**
- 212 • **Stock assessments provide necessary information to fishery managers and apply broadly to**
213 **other aspects of coastal and ocean management and policy.**

214 In 2001, NOAA Fisheries published the SAIP. Effectively, this document sought to bolster NOAA's
215 capacity and infrastructure for conducting assessments, and to expand the content and extent of these
216 assessments. The SAIP also led to the development of important performance metrics that gauge
217 progress in NOAA Fisheries' stock assessment enterprise. The 2001 SAIP provided a strategic vision that
218 enhanced program performance in the years following the release of the SAIP (see Chapter 2 for an
219 overview of accomplishments). Thus, the SAIP plays an important role in NOAA Fisheries' strategic
220 efforts to advance the stock assessment enterprise, and the objectives of this SAIP update are to
221 summarize the accomplishments and evolution of NOAA Fisheries' stock assessment enterprise since
222 the release of the original SAIP in 2001, and to outline a vision for the next generation of NOAA
223 Fisheries' assessments.

224 Although the SAIP focuses on stock assessments, it also complements many other strategic efforts that
225 collectively help NOAA Fisheries best accomplish its overall mission (Fig. 1.1). In particular, this new SAIP
226 responds to results of recent independent reviews of NOAA Fisheries' science programs and helps
227 facilitate progress toward fishery management approaches that are more ecosystem-based and climate-
228 smart. The following sections describe NOAA Fisheries' NGSA Enterprise.

229



230
231 **Figure 1.1.** NOAA Fisheries' scientific programs are guided by numerous strategic efforts and products to
232 provide advice to fishery managers under an interdisciplinary ecosystem-based approach to fishery
233 management. Strategic guidance includes the Habitat Assessment Improvement Plan (HAIP), the
234 National Climate Science Strategy (NCSS), the Stock Assessment Improvement Plan for fisheries (SAIP)
235 and Protected Resources (PRSAIP), the Ecosystem-Based Fisheries Management Roadmap (EBFM
236 Roadmap), Science Program Reviews, Agency Strategic Plans, and Legislative Mandates. Ultimately, this
237 process results in scientific advice necessary for developing fishery management plans (FMPs) and
238 fishery ecosystem plans (FEPs).

239 **1.1. What is a stock assessment?**

240 **Stock assessments**—These assessments provide the scientific underpinning of successful and
241 sustainable fishery harvest management. A stock assessment is based upon the scientific processes of
242 collecting, accessing, analyzing, and reporting species demographic information, and provides an
243 evaluation which summarizes the effects of fishing (and other drivers) on fish¹ populations, quantifies
244 uncertainty, and supports projections of future catch and stock status. The assessment process
245 culminates in a scientific product (report) that provides fishery managers with a basis for implementing
246 sustainable harvest policies. Thus, stock assessments can be considered both a product and a process.
247 Further, a stock assessment is operational science and is more focused than general research on the
248 population dynamics of a harvested fish stock: The assessment is conducted with the specific intent of
249 using the results to provide the scientific basis for fishery management decisions.

¹ The term “fish” is used throughout this document to collectively refer to all aquatic taxa affected by fishing in marine systems.

250 The three fundamental components of the stock assessment process include:

- 251 1. **Data collection and processing**—This information includes total catch from commercial,
252 recreational, and subsistence fisheries; changes in abundance informed by scientific surveys
253 and/or fishery catch rates; and biological data on fish stocks.
- 254 2. **Stock assessment modeling**—Mathematical models of stock and fishery dynamics are
255 configured and then calibrated using analytical and statistical methods. These methods relate
256 the models to patterns observed in the data used in the assessment.
- 257 3. **Developing and communicating recommendations**—Model results are summarized and
258 bracketed by scientific uncertainty, then communicated as scientific advice for fishery
259 managers.

260 Stock assessments provide advice on the following important aspects of a fish stock:

- 261 1. What are the biological limits to sustainable fishing and what fraction of the stock should be
262 harvested each year? Addressing these questions generates **harvest policy** recommendations;
263 i.e., control rules that provide a basis for determining an optimum harvest level that provides a
264 sufficiently low risk of overfishing.
- 265 2. How hard have we been fishing and what is the current **stock status**? Is the stock **overfished** or
266 undergoing **overfishing** (becoming overfished) relative to reference points that are linked to the
267 harvest policy?
- 268 3. What short-term future catch level (**forecast**) would implement the harvest policy given the
269 current stock status and prevailing environmental conditions?

270 **Harvest policies**—These policies are agreed-upon strategies for modulating catch to achieve a specified
271 objective. In the United States, harvest policies are generally focused on the concept of maximum
272 sustainable yield (MSY₂), which is the maximum catch that can be harvested from a stock on a
273 continuing basis. MSY is obtained when the fishing rate (F) is sustained for the foreseeable future at a
274 level that provides the maximum average catch. Thus, MSY is a biologically based upper limit for harvest
275 of a particular stock. However, various factors such as ecosystem and economic considerations, as well
276 as uncertainty in the calculation of MSY and the capability of actually maintaining F at the F_{MSY} level, lead
277 to recommendations for optimum yield that are somewhat less than MSY. Overall, stock assessments
278 play an important role in the development and implementation of harvest policies. In addition to
279 considering individual stock dynamics from assessments, these policies are an ideal place in the
280 management process to infuse ecosystem and socioeconomic considerations.

281 **Stock status**—These determinations are based primarily on estimates of stock biomass and fishing
282 intensity relative to established management objectives, such as the level of biomass and fishing
283 intensity that produce the MSY (B_{MSY} and F_{MSY}). Fishing at a higher rate than F_{MSY} is considered

² Most stock assessments in the United States use proxies for MSY that are based on life history characteristics (e.g., natural mortality, growth, maturity, fecundity, and proportional harvest by age or size).

284 “overfishing,” and if a stock falls below a specified fraction of B_{MSY} , the stock is considered to be
285 “overfished.” Stock assessments provide the scientific information necessary to determine stock status.
286 Knowing a stock’s status has helped fishery managers modify their harvest policies to reduce instances
287 of overfishing and rebuild many previously overfished stocks.

288 **Forecasts**—Short-term predictions of annual harvest levels and stock status (under prevailing conditions)
289 are used to help identify optimum yields and rebuilding strategies. There are uncertainties in these
290 calculations, so stock assessments strive to provide a probability-based risk framework in which the
291 chance of overfishing is balanced with the attainment of a large fraction of the maximum possible
292 biological yield. Providing a probabilistic framework allows fishery managers, stakeholders, and other
293 interested parties to make informed decisions in the face of uncertainty. The level of uncertainty in
294 assessment forecasts is reduced in cases where high-quality data exists, particularly with respect to the
295 reproduction (newly born or young organisms) that will support future harvest opportunities. Beyond
296 prevailing conditions, a wide range of scenarios and strategies can be explored. These evaluations seek
297 to define the range of reasonable harvest strategies and management options under varying conditions
298 (e.g., ecosystem, socioeconomic) to identify a set of robust choices for achieving the goals of
299 maximizing fishing opportunity and minimizing overfishing. Forecasts are a proactive result of stock
300 assessments and offer another critical place to infuse ecosystem and socioeconomic information in the
301 fishery management process.

302 **1.2. What is the context for stock assessments?**

303 Stock assessments are fundamental to sustainable fisheries management. Assessments use a
304 quantitative framework to provide recommendations to fishery managers on how much biological catch
305 can occur while preventing overfishing. In the U.S. system, fishery managers use these
306 recommendations to set annual catch limits (ACLs), which represent targets for managed fisheries. By
307 law, ACLs cannot exceed the levels recommended from the scientific process. To buffer against
308 uncertainty, managers often set lower catch targets based on risk policies that take into account
309 uncertainties in the stock assessment, ecosystem, and management processes. Thus, stock assessments
310 play a key role in fishery management by setting scientifically based and legal upper bounds on annual
311 harvest levels. Although assessments allow the agency to meet its fishery management mandates, they
312 also support other aspects of NOAA Fisheries’ mission, such as ecosystem-based fisheries management
313 (EBFM) via integrated ecosystem assessments (IEAs). NOAA Fisheries leads the nation’s efforts to
314 evaluate the status and condition of a wide range of living marine resources. These resources include a
315 broad array of marine taxa, and especially those targeted for commercial, recreational, or subsistence
316 harvest. NOAA’s stock assessment efforts are implicitly mandated by key sections of the Magnuson-
317 Stevens Act (MSA), including the following:

- 318 • Status of stocks relative to established reference points
- 319 • Whether stock rebuilding needs to occur
- 320 • Annual quotas available for catch and the most suitable harvest rates

- 321 • Other impacts to these marine taxa
322 • Potential impacts to the food webs, habitats, and ecosystems associated with these marine taxa

323 Under the MSA, approximately 474 fishery stocks are managed by 8 regional fishery management
324 councils³ and the Highly Migratory Species Division of NOAA Fisheries⁴. The agency also provides various
325 levels of support for the management of living marine resources found in state waters, international
326 waters, and related jurisdictions. Further, other mandates merit consideration of the status of and
327 impacts to marine stocks. Examples include:

- 328 • The cumulative effects to an ecosystem (National Environmental Policy Act – NEPA).
329 • Adequate forage for protected species (Marine Mammal Protection Act – MMPA Endangered
330 Species Act – ESA).
331 • Effects of other activities on living marine resources and fishing (NEPA).
332 • Effects of fishing on other parts of marine ecosystems (NEPA).
333 • Effects of development and water quality on fish stocks (Coastal Zone Management Act – CZMA
334 Clean Water Act – CWA).

335 These additional mandates are rely on knowledge of how the various ecosystem factors affect stock
336 status. Facets of other mandated management activities, whether from system-level advice or protected
337 species advice, inform and are informed by species-specific stock assessments. As such, stock
338 assessments have wide utility, mandated need, and broad application within the full suite of scientific
339 responsibilities executed by NOAA Fisheries and its partners to manage living marine resources in the
340 United States.

341 Within NOAA Fisheries' scientific portfolio, extensive programs are executed to support and enhance
342 stock assessments (Fig. 1.1). Data collection programs are fundamental to obtaining and processing the
343 traditional data inputs used to inform stock assessments (Chapter 4). The agency strives to sustain and
344 improve its data collection infrastructure, use of advanced sampling technologies, electronic
345 technologies for data collection and data management, and analytical tools, education, and training for
346 current and future professionals. This portfolio includes several programs that focus on population
347 dynamics, where scientists work to develop and implement stock assessment models and conduct
348 research to improve models. This research can consist of studies that seek to expand assessments by
349 including ecosystem and socioeconomic factors.

350 NOAA Fisheries' suite of internal programs directs and funds crucial research and promotes the
351 transition from research to operational science. The main project themes include exploring ecosystem
352 linkages, climate change impacts, economic impacts, fisheries dynamics, and habitat dependencies. The
353 agency also supports analytical methods development, management strategy evaluations, harvest
354 control rule development, and operational improvements with innovative technologies. These funds are

³ <http://www.nmfs.noaa.gov/sfa/management/councils/>

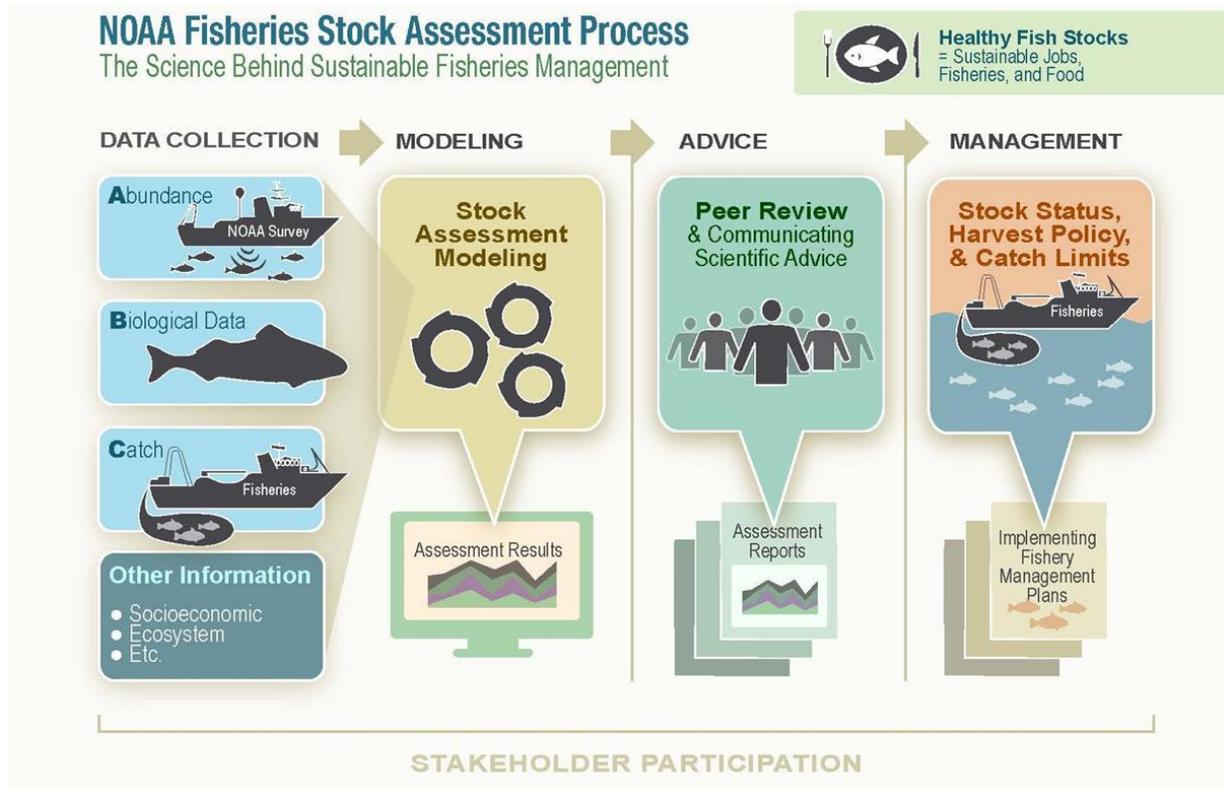
⁴ <http://www.nmfs.noaa.gov/sfa/hms/>

355 distributed broadly throughout NOAA Fisheries and to agency partners to ensure that the most qualified
356 individuals are addressing the most important problems. Further, many efforts not only have application
357 to stock assessments but also cross-cut the agency by informing protected species science, habitat and
358 ecosystem assessments, and other marine resource management considerations. As such, efforts to
359 bolster stock assessments have been beneficial to a wide range of activities, just as the stock assessment
360 process has benefited from the extensive suite of scientific efforts conducted by NOAA Fisheries. The
361 interplay among the variety of strategic guidance (Fig. 1.1) and related programs clearly demonstrates
362 the value of and need for coordinating related efforts across NOAA Fisheries' entire science enterprise.
363 One aim of this document is to advocate for the continued integration and interchange across the full
364 suite of NOAA Fisheries mandates and programs.

365 **1.3. How are stock assessments conducted?**

366 The stock assessment process consists of a full suite of efforts, including data collection and processing,
367 stock assessment modeling, and developing and communicating recommendations (Fig. 1.2). Each step
368 in the process requires technical expertise as well as substantial coordination and collaboration with
369 multiple partners and stakeholders. The quantitative advice provided by assessments is generally
370 derived from models that include mathematical representations of population and fishery dynamics,
371 and are analyzed using statistical methods. Assessments rely on data collected from commercial,
372 recreational, and subsistence fisheries; from NOAA research vessels and chartered vessels; and by
373 academic and industry partners. Data crucial for stock assessments include a full and accurate
374 accounting of the total catch (and discards) over time, measures that track changes in stock abundance,
375 and stock-specific biological information. Where available and appropriate, additional data, such as
376 information on ecosystem and socioeconomic trends, can be incorporated to make assessments more
377 comprehensive.

378 In addition to data collection and sampling, models must be developed to integrate a wide range of
379 information for a stock or group of stocks, model outputs must be reviewed, and ultimately
380 management advice must be provided. For some, the term "stock assessment" invokes particular facets
381 of the process, such as conducting scientific surveys or running assessment models. However, in this
382 document we use the term "stock assessments" to mean the full process from data collection to the
383 provision of advice.



384
 385 **Figure 1.2.** Overview of the stock assessment process from data collection through the provision of
 386 scientific advice to fishery managers. Stakeholders may participate in each step of the assessment
 387 process.

388 **1.4. Why should stock assessments be improved?**

389 There are three primary reasons to reevaluate NOAA Fisheries' stock assessment efforts, given the
 390 number of developments, advances, challenges, and opportunities that have occurred since the SAIP
 391 was published in 2001.

- 392 **1. Expanding the scope of stock assessments**—The scope of many stock assessments, which tend
 393 to focus on single-species population dynamics, needs to expand to better account for the direct
 394 impacts of changing conditions that affect overall productivity. For instance, stock productivity
 395 can be influenced by dynamics in habitats, oceanography, predators and prey, toxins, diseases,
 396 parasites, climate-scale factors, and other relevant variables. (Note that the term “ecosystem” is
 397 used from now on to refer collectively to these living and non-living dynamics that affect marine
 398 species.) The need to incorporate ecosystem dynamics is demonstrated indirectly by
 399 unexplained issues that can arise when running diagnostic tests on certain stock assessment
 400 models. For example, when observed patterns in data are not well represented by an
 401 assessment model's structure, the model may not account for crucial aspects of the ecosystem,
 402 which is necessarily a simplification of stock dynamics.

403
404 In addition, ecosystem information can improve assessments in cases where fishing intensity has
405 been reduced and the natural variation in fish stocks makes it more difficult to estimate fishing
406 rates when they are at a scale similar to natural processes. More direct evidence for the need to
407 improve ecosystem linkages comes from studies that reveal the strength of interactions among
408 species and between species and their environment. Biological factors that drive stock
409 productivity, such as natural mortality, growth, and reproduction, are not strictly inherent
410 properties of a species, but instead result from a species' interaction with its ecosystem. As
411 fishing and other factors impact ecosystem dynamics, related shifts should be expected in the
412 biological factors that form a basis for calculating sustainable fishery rates. In some cases,
413 ecosystem changes may be small enough to justify the use of simpler approaches, and in other
414 cases there are not sufficient data to look closely at ecosystem effects. Nevertheless, there is a
415 clear need to evaluate the effects of ecosystem dynamics on stock productivity to the extent
416 possible, and develop harvest control rules that are robust to these changes. These goals may be
417 best accomplished by linking certain stock assessments to ecosystem dynamics.

418
419 The original SAIP recognized the need to improve linkages between stock assessments and
420 ecosystem factors; however, the document did not explain these needs in depth. In fact, the
421 original SAIP recommended initiating a dialogue between NOAA Fisheries and the public to
422 determine how far-reaching and comprehensive these additional considerations should be. This
423 dialogue has been ongoing, and now in this updated SAIP, the need for greater inclusion of
424 ecosystem factors into stock assessments is paramount.

425
426 Further, as the collection and understanding of socioeconomic information has improved, there
427 has been an increase in the ability to account for socioeconomic dynamics in the provision of
428 management advice. Federal fisheries law requires fishery managers to optimize yield for
429 fisheries while achieving an acceptably low risk of overfishing (as mandated in National Standard
430 1 of the MSA). One tool for conducting such investigations is a management strategy evaluation
431 (MSE). NOAA Fisheries has the capability to conduct MSEs that characterize the performance of
432 a science–management–fishery system. However, resources required for MSEs vary
433 substantially depending on the type of analysis being conducted. To date, only a few MSEs have
434 been used to inform fishery management decisions. Of these MSEs, most have addressed
435 ecosystem effects while fewer have examined the economic consequences of addressing
436 uncertainty in assessments. Reinforcing the use of and capacity to conduct MSEs is crucial for
437 helping fishery managers make wise decisions that promote sustainable fisheries and resilient
438 coastal communities.

439
440 **2. Prioritizing stock assessments**—Considering the number of demands on what are projected to
441 be highly limited resources, the wise allocation of resources to conduct stock assessments
442 increasingly requires that assessments are more formally prioritized. NOAA Fisheries' budget for

443 improving and expanding assessments has grown since the 2001 SAIP, and the number of
444 assessments conducted per year has increased with the budget. However, in recent years the
445 resources available and number of assessments conducted has essentially plateaued. However,
446 there are still increasing demands to assess more stocks and conduct more frequent
447 assessments of some stocks. One of the major gaps identified in the original SAIP was to conduct
448 assessments of all managed stocks; therefore, there is a need to evaluate and prioritize stock
449 assessment efforts during the next decade and beyond. Although advocating for more resources
450 is warranted, the number, scope, extent, and focus of the full national stock assessment
451 enterprise merits more thorough examination to balance resources to best meet assessment
452 needs with limited capacity.

453
454 Additionally, there is tension among the rate at which stock assessments are conducted, the
455 thoroughness of those assessments, and the degree of transparency throughout the process.
456 Independent reviews of stock assessments are necessary to ensure that the best science
457 information is being used to guide management and to gain the trust of the affected public.
458 However, during the past 15 years, the increase in stock assessments has highlighted the need
459 to balance the frequency of more rigorous, independent peer reviews of assessments with a
460 streamlined review processes to ensure timely assessments for management decisions. The
461 mandate to specify annual catch limits for all federally managed stocks suggests a demand for
462 more frequent production of stock assessments. Certain assessments will always require
463 thorough reviews, although streamlined processes should be explored where possible to
464 increase assessment throughput.

465
466 **3. Utilizing innovative methodology and technology**—Most assessment models estimate stock
467 abundance and mortality rates by calibrating the models with observed trends in fishing
468 intensity and indices of relative abundance from fishery-independent sources (e.g., resource
469 surveys). The models tend to perform better when there is a contrast in fishing intensity and
470 abundance over time (i.e., periods of high and low fishing rates and abundance). However, as
471 fishery management has become more effective at controlling fishing rates, the degree of
472 contrast in the observations is diminishing for many stocks. Therefore, another source of
473 calibration data may be required, and one potentially beneficial option may be the use of
474 advanced sampling technologies to create surveys that directly measure absolute stock
475 abundance, not just relative abundance. For instance, the use of acoustic and optical (photo and
476 video) sampling technologies can be used to improve understanding of the degree to which
477 traditional methods are sampling available fish, which simplifies the ability to better scale
478 abundance measurements to actual abundance (rather than relative measures). Even if not
479 estimated for every year in an assessment, these measures of absolute abundance would help
480 anchor a stock assessment at reasonable levels of stock biomass. Additionally, advanced
481 sampling technologies can be used to expand sampling efforts into areas that are not easily
482 sampled with more traditional methods, thereby improving data for assessments.

483
484 Beyond sampling technologies, new analytical tools are needed to improve standard assessment
485 models. Some important developments include advances in multispecies models and
486 approaches that facilitate better connections between stock assessments and ecosystem
487 dynamics, as well as improved analytical tools for data-limited stocks. Further, methodological
488 advances could be adopted from other fields, such as infrastructural and analytical
489 considerations associated with big data, risk analyses, financial forecasting, chaotic dynamics,
490 and related quantitative approaches. The exploration of innovative methodologies warrants an
491 evaluation of novel data needs. New approaches may rely on new sources of information, such
492 as enhanced ocean observing systems for more efficient sampling, genomics, isotopes, fatty
493 acids, and other chemical, electronic, or acoustic signatures of fish stocks and their ecosystems
494 (Chapter 8).

495
496 Much of the theory on which the stock assessment enterprise is based has had a solid, multi-
497 decade history of testing. However, to address current issues in fisheries science and
498 management, the proposal, development, and evaluation of theoretical advancements should
499 be pursued. Thus, NOAA Fisheries' NGS Enterprise must provide the ability, expectation,
500 venues, and time for the agency to play a leading role in expanding and advancing the stock
501 assessment enterprise.

502 **1.5. What is in this SAIP update?**

503 Ultimately, the goals of this SAIP update are to summarize the accomplishments and evolution of NOAA
504 Fisheries' stock assessment enterprise since the release of the original SAIP in 2001. In addition, this
505 update outlines a vision for the next generation of NOAA Fisheries' assessments. With these goals in
506 mind, the three fundamental components of this SAIP include the following:

- 507 • A recap of accomplishments from the original SAIP (Chapter 2)
- 508 • An updated description of the current stock assessment enterprise (Section II)
- 509 • A description of the NGS Enterprise (Section III)

510

511

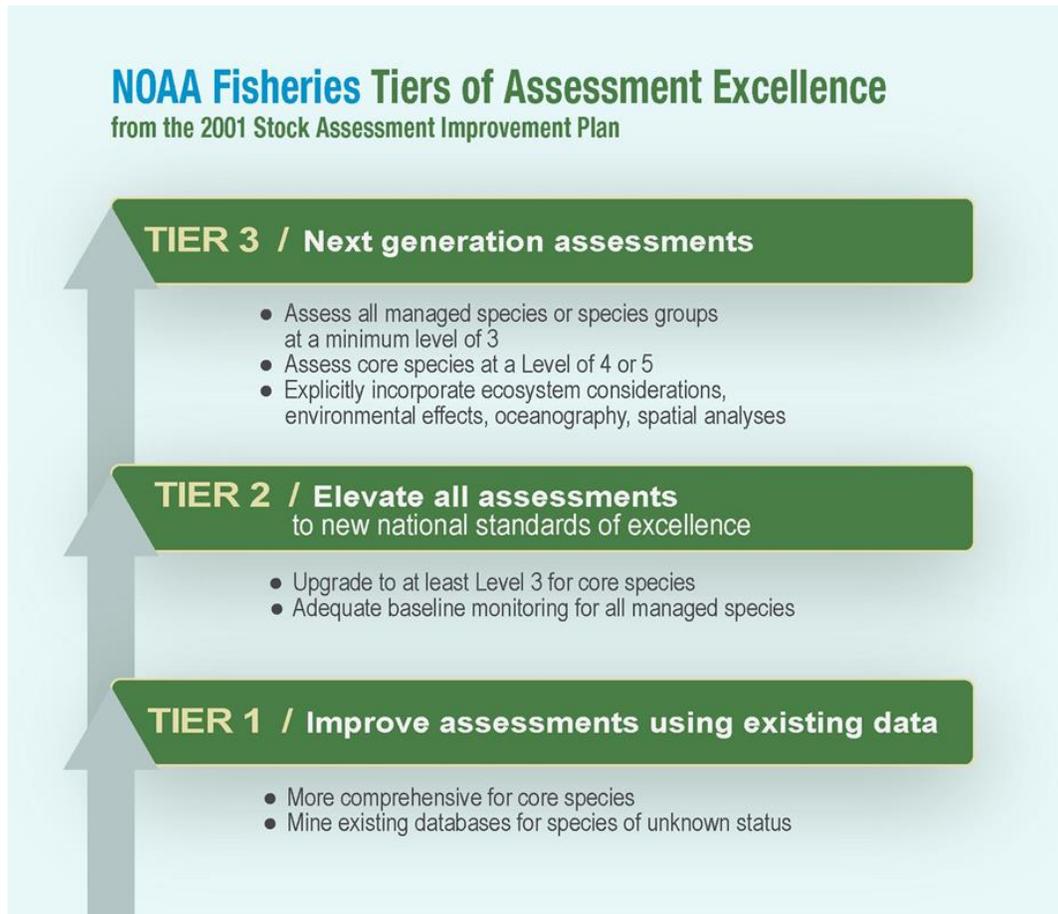
512 **Chapter 2—Accomplishments of NOAA Fisheries' Stock** 513 **Assessment Enterprise**

514 **Chapter highlights:**

- 515 • **An increased quantity and quality of stock assessments in support of strong fishery**
516 **management has greatly reduced overfishing and facilitated rebuilding of many overfished**
517 **stocks.**
- 518 • **Stock assessment program funds have increased in response to the 2001 Stock Assessment**
519 **Improvement Plan (SAIP), expanding the capacity for data collection, monitoring, and**
520 **advancing stock assessment science.**
- 521 • **NOAA Fisheries has a national infrastructure for stock assessment programs.**
- 522 • **More is now known about stock dynamics. The increased attention has highlighted the**
523 **importance of expanding many assessments to consider factors such as changes in the**
524 **ecosystem.**

525 **2.1. The 2001 Stock Assessment Improvement Plan**

526 Generally, U.S. fisheries are recognized around the world as being successfully and sustainably managed
527 (Food and Agriculture Organization (FAO), 2014). This success is due mainly to a scientifically driven
528 management process that relies on the advice from the NOAA Fisheries stock assessment enterprise.
529 Since the release of the SAIP in 2001, the subsequent expansion and advancement of the stock
530 assessment program has drastically improved the quantity and quality of stock assessments being used
531 to support fishery management. The 2001 SAIP defined three Tiers of Assessment Excellence to serve as
532 milestones for NOAA's stock assessment enterprise (Fig. 2.1). The three tiers centered on assessment
533 "levels" that were defined in the 2001 SAIP (not defined or used here), and the 2001 document
534 recommended an initial effort to strive for Tier 2 at a minimum. Meanwhile, the 2001 SAIP also initiated
535 a dialogue on the potential importance of taking more of an ecosystem approach to stock assessments.
536 Although the original strategy was useful for expanding the scope and number of stocks assessed,
537 Section III of this document describes a new strategy that shifts the focus from moving up the tiers for
538 all stocks to setting stock-specific priorities.



539
540
541
542
543

Fig. 2.1 Summary of the three Tiers of Assessment Excellence, as described in the 2001 Stock Assessment Improvement Plan (Mace et al., 2001). **Note:** The “levels” referenced in the figure were defined in the 2001 SAIP, but not defined here to avoid confusion with later chapters.

544
545
546

The 2001 SAIP concluded with 10 recommendations that set a strategic direction for NOAA Fisheries’ stock assessment enterprise (NMFS, 2001). Those 10 recommendations can be combined into 6 general categories that served as new focus areas for NOAA Fisheries:

547
548
549
550
551
552
553
554
555

1. Increase overall budget and staff to expand data collection and stock assessment capabilities.
2. Enhance existing educational and training programs in quantitative fisheries and ecosystem science, fisheries economics, and social sciences to ensure an available pool of new federal fisheries scientists. In addition, develop comprehensive training programs to enhance the scientific skills of current federal scientists.
3. Improve stock assessments by enhancing partnerships and cooperative programs with other federal and state agencies, private foundations, universities, environmental groups, recreational and commercial fishing organizations, individual fishermen, and other stakeholders with an interest in data collection for stock assessments.

- 556 4. Increase federal and academic research to advance stock assessment methods.
557 5. Strengthen public awareness and credibility of NOAA Fisheries' stock assessment science by
558 expanding internal and external outreach and communications efforts.
559 6. Create an overall strategic plan that provides comprehensive guidance toward achieving the
560 mission of NOAA Fisheries.
561

562 NOAA Fisheries relied on the strategic direction put forth in the 2001 SAIP to improve the quality and
563 quantity of its stock assessments by supporting advancements in data collection, research, workforce
564 capacity, public messaging, and integrated strategic planning. In addition, a National Research Council
565 report (NRC, 1998) identified gaps in NOAA Fisheries' stock assessment program, with emphasis on data
566 collection, analytical methods, assessment processes, and education and training. To address federal
567 mandates, the 6 focus areas identified from the 2001 SAIP, the 1998 NRC report, and other sources,
568 NOAA Fisheries expanded its efforts toward building a robust and reliable stock assessment enterprise.
569 These advances have created a strong foundation that aids the development and implementation of an
570 NGS Enterprise.

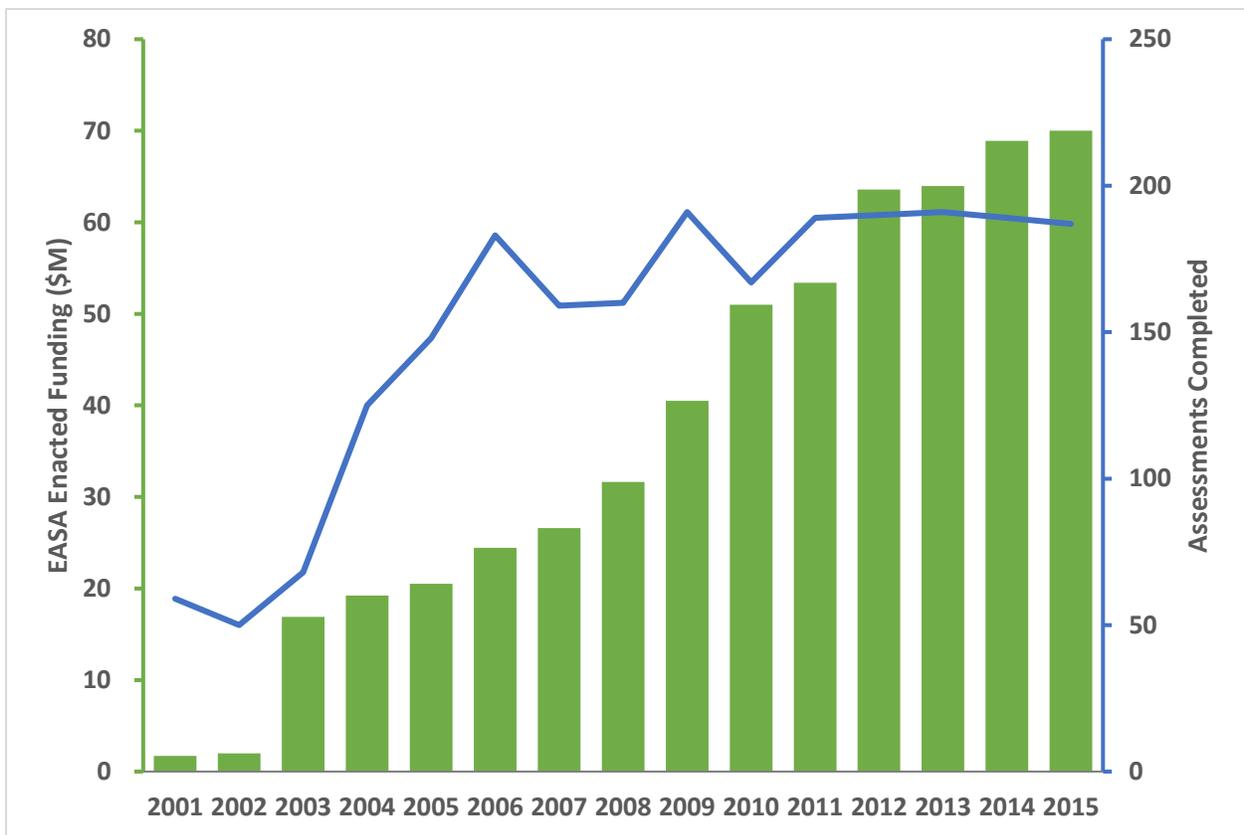
571 **2.2. Improvements and Impacts of NOAA's Stock Assessments in the 21st** 572 **Century**

573 NOAA Fisheries' stock assessments have directly improved an overall understanding of the state of U.S.
574 fisheries and have enhanced the science needed to manage for sustainability. With knowledge of stock
575 status, fishery managers can make informed decisions to meet their management targets. From 2001 to
576 2014, NOAA Fisheries' capacity for conducting stock assessments increased substantially, with more
577 than 50 assessments conducted in 2001 and almost 190 assessments in 2015, a 217% increase in
578 assessment output (Fig. 2.2). During this period, NOAA Fisheries' assessments provided the information
579 to reduce the number of stocks experiencing overfishing by 30% and reduce the number of overfished
580 stocks by 24% (Fig. 2.3). Thus, NOAA Fisheries' stock assessment enterprise has played a major role in
581 establishing sustainable U.S. fisheries during the past 15 years.

582 In 2005, NOAA Fisheries developed the Fish Stock Sustainability Index (FSSI), a performance measure
583 that tracks the status and assessments of 199 core stocks identified according to regional priorities. Each
584 stock tracked is awarded points if its status is known and if it is not considered overfished or undergoing
585 overfishing. The FSSI combines this information into a single number by totaling the 199 FSSI stocks (the
586 maximum possible value for the FSSI when summed across all categories and all stocks is 1,000).
587 Significant effort has been dedicated toward conducting assessments of FSSI stocks in particular, and
588 toward eliminating overfishing on all stocks. As a result, the FSSI has been steadily increasing since its
589 inception toward its maximum value of 1,000 (Fig. 2.3). This trend is a simple and clear measure that
590 emphasizes the success of a federal fishery management process that manages for sustainability.

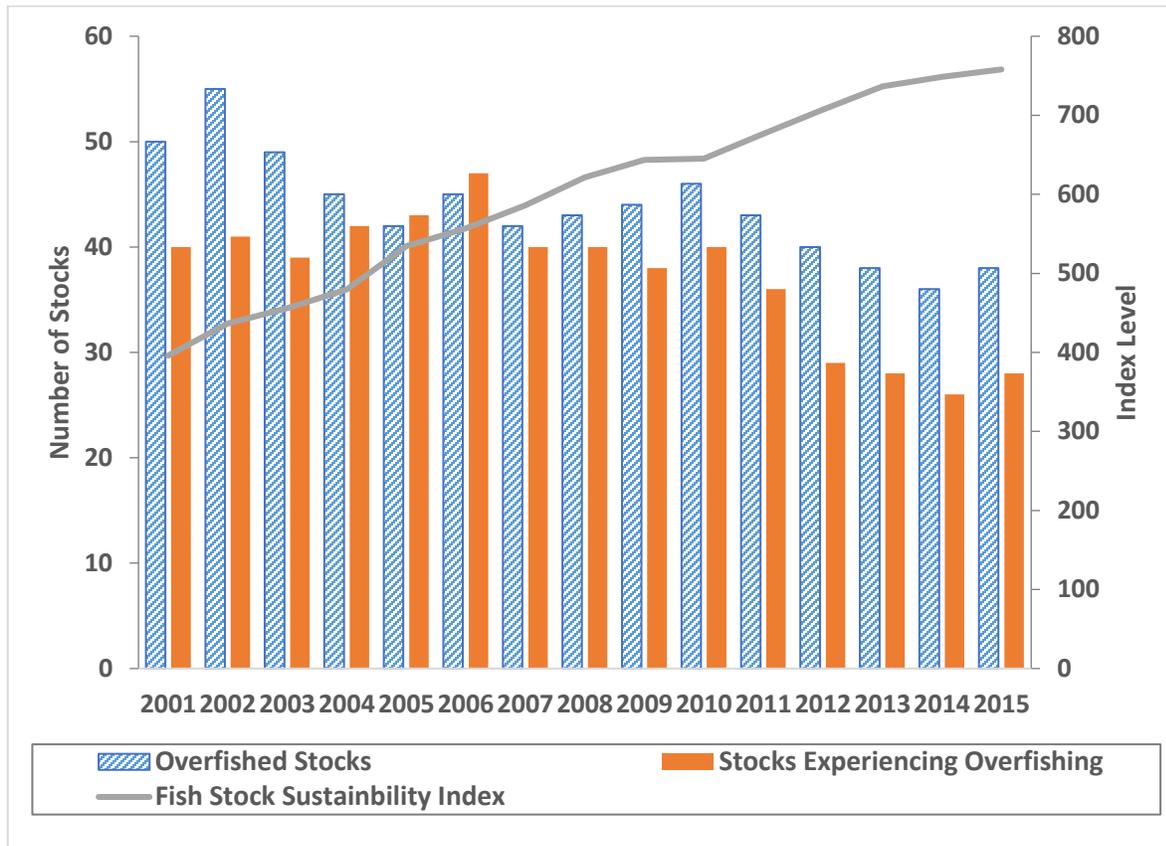
591 The quantity and quality of stock assessments increased because of budget and staffing increases in
 592 NOAA Fisheries' core stock assessment budget lines (2001 SAIP, focus area 1). In particular, the 2001
 593 SAIP supported growth of the Expand Annual Stock Assessments (EASA) budget line from \$1.7 million in
 594 2001 to \$70.0 million in 2015 (Fig. 2.2). This growth in overall capacity enabled a range of investments
 595 that improved the national stock assessment program. Broadly, these investments included advances in
 596 data collection and monitoring programs, research in advanced sampling technologies and stock
 597 assessment methods, workforce capacity, and the stock assessment peer review process. Although the
 598 total number of stock assessments conducted each year has stabilized recently, the science behind the
 599 assessments has continued to improve.

600



601

602 **Figure 2.2.** Comparison of the total number of stock assessments completed each year for federally
 603 managed stocks (right axis, blue line) and growth in the EASA budget line (left axis, green bars), 2001–
 604 2015. **Notes:** 1) Tracking of stock assessments before 2005 was less complete; 2) The FSSI was calculated
 605 retroactively for 2001–2004; 3) Budget lines other than EASA also contribute to stock assessments.



606

607 **Fig. 2.3.** Status of federally managed fish stocks (number of overfished stocks and stocks experiencing
 608 overfishing; left axis) over time compared with the NOAA Fisheries' Fish Stock Sustainability Index (right
 609 axis), 2001–2015.

610 **2.2.1. Data Collection and Monitoring Capabilities**

611 The data collection and monitoring capabilities of NOAA Fisheries' has expanded substantially.
 612 Improvements to catch monitoring programs have resulted in better coordination of data on
 613 commercial fishery statistics and better estimation of recreational statistics. The Fisheries Information
 614 System (FIS) program was established to coordinate fishery statistics and to facilitate public access to
 615 comprehensive, high-quality, and timely fisheries information. Another effort is the Marine Recreational
 616 Fisheries Statistics Survey (MRFSS), a long-standing program originating out of the Magnuson Fishery
 617 Conservation and Management Act of 1976 that has served as a foundational source of marine
 618 recreational fisheries information. With an increasing demand for improved stock assessments, it
 619 became clear that improvements to MRFSS were also needed. Therefore, in 2007, MRFSS was revised
 620 and renamed the Marine Recreational Information Program (MRIP).

621 Another investment made by NOAA Fisheries was to expand the regional fisheries observer programs
 622 that are coordinated under a National Observer Program (NOP). Funding for observers has tripled since

623 1999, resulting in an increase in the number of fisheries monitored by onboard observers from 17 to 48
624 (including 10 catch share fisheries) and the number of observer days from 55,000 to 80,210. This
625 increase in fishery-dependent data collection has improved the accuracy of NOAA Fisheries' stock
626 assessments, improved the characterization of fishery bycatch, and resulted in better overall fishery
627 management. However, for many fisheries observer coverage remains low. In these cases, without
628 further expansion, stock assessments will be challenging and may provide highly uncertain results.

629 In an effort to expand and improve fishery-dependent sampling, NOAA Fisheries has been evaluating
630 and incorporating electronic monitoring and electronic reporting (EM/ER). Electronic reporting relies on
631 digital data collection interfaces to allow reporting by fishermen, whereas electronic monitoring relies
632 on video cameras to remotely observe fishery operations. These technologies can be used in a variety of
633 fishery monitoring programs, and in fact strategic plans have been developed in each region to identify,
634 evaluate, and prioritize implementation of these technologies.

635 In addition to expanding fishery-dependent data collection, NOAA Fisheries also invested in developing
636 and/or improving scientific (fishery-independent) surveys. For instance, the West Coast Groundfish
637 Bottom Trawl Survey expanded in spatial coverage, improving monitoring of approximately 90
638 commercially fished stocks along the coasts of Washington, Oregon, and California. Also, in
639 collaboration with the South Carolina Department of Natural Resources' Marine Resource Monitoring
640 and Assessment Program (MARMAP), NOAA Fisheries established the Southeast Fishery Independent
641 Survey (SEFIS) program, which uses trap and video surveys to monitor reef fish in South Atlantic waters.
642 This survey increased the accuracy, precision, and usefulness of data available for assessments and
643 facilitated a greater than two-fold increase in the size of annual survey samples. Atlantic sea scallops
644 also benefitted from improved survey capability by creating a habitat camera mapping system (HabCam)
645 to augment the dragged dredge survey. This expansion significantly increased the number of scallops
646 that could be observed by the survey, resulting in more accurate estimates of scallop abundance and
647 habitat. Another example of expanded capacity is the Northeast Area Monitoring and Assessment
648 Program (NEAMAP), a new survey that complements the NOAA Fisheries' bottom trawl survey by
649 sampling shallower inshore habitat.

650 Although the development of new surveys has expanded total data collection capabilities, the overall
651 cost of data collection has continued to increase. Scientific resource surveys are further limited by the
652 availability of NOAA research vessels and funding to support chartering University–National
653 Oceanographic Laboratory System (UNOLS) vessels and commercial industry vessels. Therefore, when
654 considering the capacity required to provide management advice on all stocks under NOAA Fisheries'
655 purview, there is a need to sustain NOAA's fleet infrastructure. Also required is improved survey
656 coverage with integrated ocean observation systems. This coordination will help address information
657 gaps and spatial uncertainties in stock assessments in a changing environment.

⁵ <http://www.st.nmfs.noaa.gov/advanced-technology/electronic-monitoring/index>

658 **2.2.2. Education and Training of Stock Assessment Scientists**

659 The overall demand for more and improved stock assessments resulted in the realization that there
660 were not enough stock assessment scientists in NOAA Fisheries to meet the growing assessment
661 demand. Furthermore, as indicated by focus area 2 of the 2001 SAIP and NRC (1998), existing university
662 programs were not capable of supplying enough stock assessment scientists to meet the expanding
663 need. This awareness prompted investments in each fisheries science center to support educational
664 efforts and connections among NOAA Fisheries and academia across the regions. One program that
665 resulted from this initial investment is the West Coast Groundfish Stock Assessment Training and
666 Mentoring program at the University of Washington, which is now considered one of the premiere
667 institutions for training stock assessment scientists.. Another example is the Research Training and
668 Recruitment (RTR) program in the southeast region. This program was designed to create a pipeline to
669 introduce undergraduate students to stock assessment science, train graduate students, and recruit
670 stock assessment scientists to NOAA Fisheries. Unfortunately, the RTR program has been discontinued
671 due to budget cuts, but given the value and need for this pipeline, restarting the program could prove
672 beneficial.

673 Following the 2001 SAIP, NOAA Fisheries and NOAA Sea Grant expanded their joint fellowship programs
674 in population dynamics and marine resource economics. Initially supporting approximately 3 fellows per
675 year, the fellowship program grew to fund 6 fellows on average with a maximum of 12 awarded in 1
676 year. Since the program's inception, more than 40% of fellows have gone on to work for NOAA Fisheries.
677 Furthermore, to build capacity in ecosystem modeling, the NOAA Fisheries–Sea Grant fellowship
678 program recently expanded to include quantitative ecology in general. NOAA also supports numerous
679 other academic partnerships to facilitate education and training in mission-critical areas, including the
680 Quantitative Ecology and Socioeconomics Training Program (QUEST), Cooperative Ecosystem Studies
681 Units (CESUs), NOAA's 16 Cooperative Institutes (CIs), the Living Marine Resources Cooperative Science
682 Center (LMRCSC), and many other programs coordinated by NOAA's Office of Education. Overall, the
683 various educational programs have led to significant increases in the number of scientists with the
684 quantitative skills necessary to provide scientific advice to fishery managers.

685 Despite initial investments in education and training, the need for qualified candidates has continued to
686 exceed the number available. The gap in available stock assessment scientists was again illustrated in a
687 2008 report from the Departments of Commerce and Education, "The Shortage in the Number of
688 Individuals with Post-Baccalaureate Degrees in Subjects Related to Fishery Science" (U.S. Dept. of
689 Commerce and U.S. Dept. of Education, 2008). In recognition of the ongoing shortage, NOAA Fisheries
690 continues to expand its QUEST program to increase the number of academic faculty in these disciplines.
691 The QUEST program now provides dedicated support to seven faculty and additional support to three
692 rotating faculty. As NOAA-supported faculties continue to train individuals, the identified gap in qualified
693 candidates will continue to decrease, thereby addressing SAIP focus area 2.

694 **2.2.3. Cooperative Research**

695

696 To comply with focus area 3, cooperative research programs were established at national and regional
697 levels to increase data collection capabilities. These programs also fostered communication,
698 coordination, and mutual respect among NOAA Fisheries and its stakeholders. In addition, cooperative
699 research has been shown to improve associations among fishers, scientists, and managers (Hartley and
700 Robinson, 2006; Johnson and van Densen, 2007; Johnson 2010) by increasing opportunities for
701 successful and sustainable management. Investments in cooperative research have also facilitated the
702 development of innovative approaches to collecting, processing, and reporting information on stocks
703 that were previously unavailable. A number of fishery-independent surveys previously conducted
704 exclusively on NOAA ships were complemented or replaced by surveys from chartered industry vessels.
705 For instance, NOAA Fisheries' Atlantic Surfclam–Ocean Quahog Survey began chartering an industry
706 vessel in 2012. The NOAA-supported Northeast Area Monitoring and Assessment Program (NEAMAP) is
707 also conducted by an industry vessel and augments existing surveys conducted on NOAA ships in the
708 Northwest Atlantic. Additionally, the main groundfish trawl surveys conducted along the U.S. West
709 Coast and Alaska are implemented through industry charters. NOAA Fisheries continues to expand
710 collaborations with industry as well as other partner agencies (e.g., the previously mentioned SEFIS
711 survey) to support sustainable fisheries management that engages stakeholders at all levels.

712 **2.2.4. Advancements in Fisheries Science**

713 NOAA Fisheries continues to support advancements in fisheries science (SAIP focus area 4) through the
714 creation of several national working groups that focus on specific mission-critical topics. These programs
715 are coordinated at NOAA Fisheries headquarters by the Office of Science and Technology, and many of
716 these working groups manage internal funding to support regional projects that address high-priority
717 issues, including improvements for stock assessments. In addition to supporting research, the funding
718 opportunities foster collaboration and technology distribution throughout NOAA. Although the projects
719 are led by NOAA scientists, collaboration with external groups is encouraged and results in partnerships
720 with academics; commercial and recreational fishers; state, interstate, national, and international
721 agencies; and non-governmental organizations. These partnerships have provided substantial
722 improvements to NOAA Fisheries' stock assessment and monitoring capabilities.

723 Collectively in fiscal year 2015, almost \$14 million in funding was distributed across programs to support
724 innovative research in stock assessments and other aspects of fisheries science. Over time, these
725 investments have resulted in major advancements, resulting in improvements in the science used to
726 support fisheries management. For example, the Assessment Methods Working Group provides national
727 oversight to facilitate direct improvements in the stock assessment enterprise. This group oversees the
728 NOAA Fisheries Toolbox⁶, which provides a suite of standardized interfaces for implementing stock
729 assessment analyses. Several Toolbox techniques were developed or improved through research

⁶ <http://nft.nefsc.noaa.gov/>

730 projects funded by working groups and are now publicly available and applied in operational stock
731 assessments. The Assessment Methods Working Group also facilitates NOAA's annual support of the AD
732 Model Builder Project⁷. The ongoing support of this project has allowed open access to AD Model
733 Builder, a software package that serves as the basis for a large percentage of NOAA Fisheries' stock
734 assessments as well as stock assessments around the world. Other working groups focus on various
735 aspects of fisheries science, including the incorporation of ecosystem and habitat information in the
736 assessment process; improvements to the efficiency of data collection and survey operations with
737 innovative technologies; and enhancements to cooperative research and international collaborations.

738 **2.2.5. Peer Review Approaches**

739 Notable improvements to the fishery management process have resulted from establishing rigorous
740 peer review methods for stock assessments. Although various review processes were in place before
741 2001, substantial investments in stock assessment quality assurance have been made since the 2001
742 SAIP. In part, these investments were driven by legislative mandates to ensure that the best scientific
743 information available was provided to fishery managers. Investments were also made to increase the
744 credibility of NOAA Fisheries science products among stakeholders (SAIP focus area 5), and increase
745 transparency and opportunities for public engagement in the fishery management process. A national
746 peer review process, called the Center for Independent Experts (CIE), was established to provide a
747 rigorous independent review of emerging scientific methods and influential science products. Various
748 regional processes were either created or improved since 2001, including the Southeast Data,
749 Assessment, and Review (SEDAR); Stock Assessment Workshop/Stock Assessment Review Committee
750 (SAW/SARC) in the Northeast; Stock Assessment Review (STAR) in the Northwest; Western Pacific Stock
751 Assessment Review (WPSAR); and the Plan Team process in the North Pacific. These regional processes
752 all rely on the CIE when a higher degree of independence is required, particularly in the selection
753 process of highly qualified reviewers. Overall, the level of quality assurance for stock assessments has
754 vastly improved since the 2001 SAIP, resulting in a thorough and transparent fishery management
755 process that uses high-quality advice as the basis for management decisions. Approaches to stock
756 assessment quality assurance and peer reviews are covered in greater detail in Chapter 6.

757 **2.2.6. Communication and Outreach**

758 In the context of SAIP focus area 5, NOAA Fisheries has made a considerable effort to improve its
759 communication and public outreach about stock assessments. Access to stock assessment reports has
760 vastly improved, and the reports themselves have become comprehensive descriptions of the entire
761 assessment. Although some of these reports can be difficult to understand, they offer a high degree of
762 transparency. To improve access to assessment information, many reports now include upfront
763 summaries of the primary results. NOAA Fisheries is continually improving its outreach and engagement
764 strategy to convey information and maintain ongoing dialogues with a variety of audiences.

⁷ <http://www.admb-project.org/>

765 Improvements have aimed to provide better information and engagement with stakeholders on the
766 national stock assessment program and its performance, facilitate access to data used in stock
767 assessments, improve communication within the national stock assessment program, and promote
768 transparency in the assessment process and the resulting scientific advice. The Marine Resource
769 Education Program (MREP), which is funded through a grant to the Gulf of Maine Research Institute, is a
770 successful program designed to provide fishery stakeholders with an inside look at fisheries science and
771 the management process.

772 Many new products have been developed to convey fishery stock assessment and management
773 information to a variety of audiences. For instance, FishWatch⁸ is a website designed by NOAA Fisheries
774 to provide scientific information to consumers to encourage sustainable seafood choices. The Species
775 Information System is a national database that stores stock assessment and fishery management
776 information and offers access to summaries and results from assessments through a public portal⁹.
777 NOAA Fisheries also generates several regular reports, such as annual reports to Congress on the status
778 of stocks,¹⁰ national stock assessment summary reports,¹¹ and annual summaries of commercial fishing
779 statistics and economic impacts through Fisheries of the United States¹² and Fisheries Economics of the
780 United States,¹³ respectively. Completing these efforts provide broad access to the science that supports
781 federal fisheries management.

782 Additionally, NOAA Fisheries welcomes opportunities to engage on assessment-related topics with
783 various interested parties. These stakeholders include non-governmental organizations; NOAA and
784 Department of Commerce leadership; Office of Management and Budget staff; Congressional
785 representatives; and regional councils, both individually and nationally, through venues such as New
786 Council Member Training, and the Council Coordination Committee and its Scientific Coordination
787 Subcommittee. The incremental increases in appropriated funds, along with an improved public
788 perception of NOAA Fisheries, suggest that overall expanded outreach and communication efforts have
789 been effective in some areas. Nevertheless, communication and outreach efforts need to be expanded
790 and improved. To achieve that goal, NOAA Fisheries will continue to seek funding and opportunities to
791 improve strategies for communicating to and engaging with stakeholders on the stock assessment
792 process.

793 **2.2.7. Strategic Planning**

794 Focus area 6 from the 2001 SAIP has been addressed through significant expansion of the extent to
795 which NOAA Fisheries conducts and coordinates strategic planning efforts. The SAIP itself represents

⁸ <http://www.fishwatch.gov/about/index.htm>

⁹ <https://www.st.nmfs.noaa.gov/sisPortal/sisPortalMain.jsp>

¹⁰ http://www.nmfs.noaa.gov/sfa/fisheries_eco/status_of_fisheries/

¹¹ <http://www.st.nmfs.noaa.gov/stock-assessment/FishStockReports/index>

¹² <http://www.st.nmfs.noaa.gov/commercial-fisheries/fus/fus13/index>

¹³ http://www.st.nmfs.noaa.gov/economics/publications/feus/fisheries_economics_2012

796 one of many focused efforts that advance or report on a fundamental aspect of NOAA Fisheries'
797 scientific portfolio. As portrayed in Fig. 1.1, other focused strategic efforts include the Marine Fisheries
798 Habitat Assessment Improvement Plan (NMFS, 2010); the National Climate Science Strategy (Link et al.,
799 2015); strategic documents related to assessing protected marine species (NMFS, 2004 and 2013); and
800 annual peer reviews of NOAA Fisheries' scientific programs.¹⁴ Additionally, a number of regular reports
801 provide updates and opportunities for strategic evaluation of specific programs. For instance, the
802 National Bycatch Report¹⁵ provides a species-level accounting of bycatch by U.S. fisheries, and the
803 Fisheries Information System Annual Report¹⁶ describes the status of NOAA Fisheries data collection
804 programs. Together, the various plans and reports are combined under the broad category of
805 Ecosystem-Based Fishery Management (EBFM). Finally, the focused strategic planning efforts are
806 synthesized and funneled through a number of national efforts. Several of these larger efforts include
807 strategic plans and Annual Guidance Memoranda produced at multiple levels (office, agency, and
808 department) and are used to guide agency and program operations.

809 **2.3. Summary of the 2001 SAIP**

810 The 2001 SAIP has been an invaluable strategic planning document that facilitated vast improvements in
811 NOAA fisheries' stock assessment enterprise. Resulting increases in funds for stock assessment science
812 allowed NOAA Fisheries to improve many stock assessments and address the six focus areas of the 2001
813 SAIP to varying degrees. As a result, the stock assessment programs and staff employed by NOAA
814 Fisheries provide world-class scientific advice to resource managers. Despite the need for continuing
815 advancements in the stock assessment enterprise (culminating in this new SAIP), it should not be
816 overlooked that the U.S. fishery management system has been highly successful in achieving resource
817 sustainability and community resiliency.

818 **References**

819 Food and Agricultural Organization of the United Nations (FAO). 2014. The state of the world fisheries
820 and aquaculture 2014, 223 p. Rome.

821 Link, J. S., R. Griffis, and S. Busch (eds). 2015. NOAA Fisheries Climate Science Strategy. NOAA Tech.
822 Memo. NMFS-F/SPO-155, 70 p.

823 U.S. Dept. Commer. and U.S. Dept. Educ. 2008. The shortage in the number of individuals with post-
824 baccalaureate degrees in subjects related to fishery science. NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-F/SPO-
825 91, 84 p.

¹⁴ <http://www.st.nmfs.noaa.gov/science-program-review/index>

¹⁵ https://www.st.nmfs.noaa.gov/Assets/Observer-Program/bycatch-report-update-2/NBR%20First%20Edition%20Update%202_Final.pdf

¹⁶ <http://www.st.nmfs.noaa.gov/Assets/FIS/documents/FIS%20Annual%20Report.pdf>

826

827

828

829

SECTION II. THE CURRENT STATE OF NOAA FISHERIES' STOCK ASSESSMENT ENTERPRISE

830

831

832

833 Chapter 3. Overview of NOAA Fisheries' National Stock 834 Assessment Programs

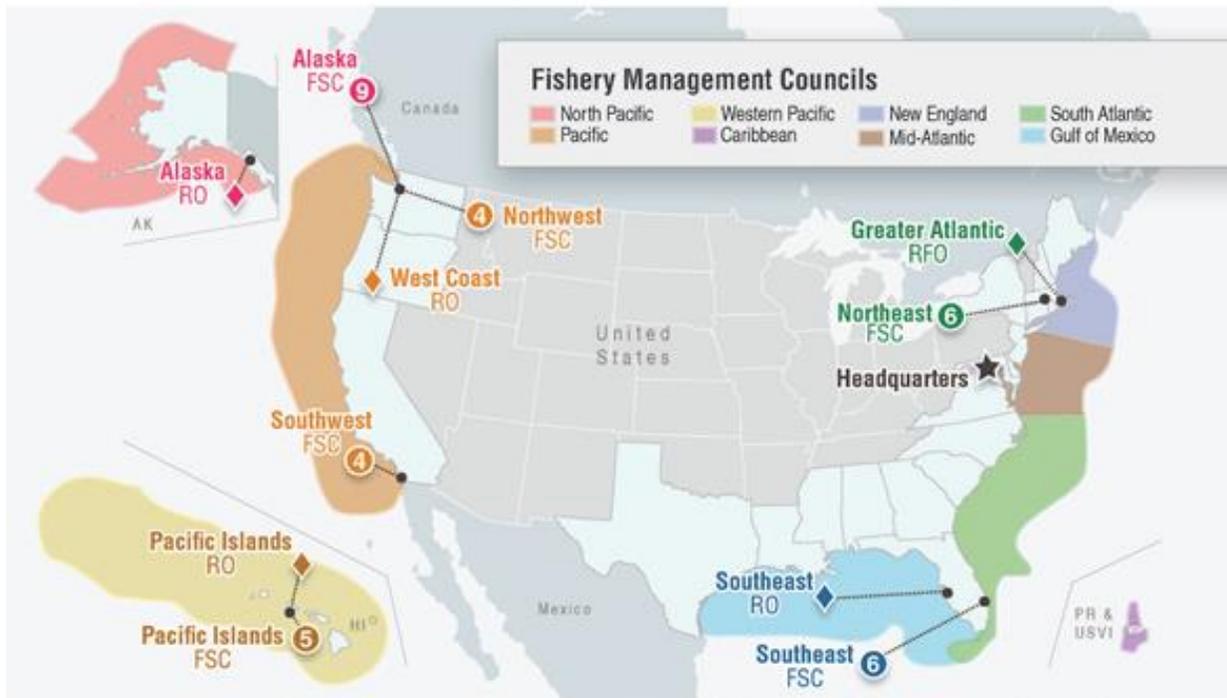
835 Chapter highlights:

- 836 • NOAA Fisheries' stock assessments provide scientific advice for federal fisheries managed by
837 regional fishery management councils and other fisheries managed by state, interstate, and
838 international organizations.
- 839 • Regional assessment programs face diverse issues due to the nature of regional fisheries,
840 species, ecosystems, and governances.
- 841 • Despite regional differences, patterns have emerged in the methods used to conduct
842 assessments for federally managed fisheries.

843 NOAA Fisheries' stock assessment programs provide global leadership in stock assessment science. The
844 stock assessment enterprise is a combined system that operates through regional science–management
845 partnerships and coordination, and national initiatives from headquarters offices. As described in
846 Chapter 1, NOAA Fisheries is directed by federal law to provide scientific advice to eight Regional Fishery
847 Management Councils and NOAA Fisheries' Atlantic Highly Migratory Species Division for more than 473
848 federally managed fish stocks, some of which are stock complexes that contain many individual stocks.
849 NOAA Fisheries' science centers coordinate with their respective regional offices to provide scientific
850 advice to federal fishery managers. Further, NOAA creates partnerships with state, interstate, and
851 international fishery management organizations, and NOAA scientists work collaboratively with these
852 groups to conduct or assist with assessments of stocks that do not fall under federal jurisdiction. Figure
853 3.1 shows the organization and responsibilities of NOAA Fisheries' stock assessment enterprise.

854 The types of stocks managed vary across regions. There are notable differences in the types of fisheries;
855 stakeholders affected; jurisdictions and their respective assessment processes supported (see Chapter
856 6); and the natural ecosystems that support the productivity of fisheries. For example, many of the
857 longest-standing and most lucrative commercial fisheries target groundfish and shellfish in temperate
858 and cold waters (e.g., cod, pollock, scallops, crabs, and so on). In addition, several science centers
859 conduct assessments of the nation's most economically and ecologically valuable groundfish and
860 shellfish (especially the Alaska and Northeast Science Centers). Despite these differences, common
861 characteristics among regions can be used to maximum advantage when designing strategies for NOAA's
862 stock assessment programs.

NOAA Fisheries Science to Support Fisheries Management



▫ The Western Pacific FMC manages additional regions not depicted here.

NOAA Fisheries Organization

Regions	Regional Offices (RO)	Fishery Science Centers (FSC) # Number of Fishery Management and/or Advisory Organizations supported by Science Center	Labs / Field Stations / Facilities
Alaska	♦ Alaska RO Juneau, AK	9 Alaska FSC Seattle, WA	AK • Anchorage • Baranof Island • Dutch Harbor • Juneau • Kodiak • Pribilof Islands WA • Seattle OR • Newport
West Coast	♦ West Coast RO Seattle, WA	5 Northwest FSC Seattle, WA	WA • Manchester • Pasco • Seattle • Mukiteo
		4 Southwest FSC La Jolla, CA	CA • Arcata • Granite Canyon • La Jolla • Pacific Grove • Piedras • Santa Cruz Antarctica • King George Isl. • Livingston
Pacific Islands	♦ Pacific Islands RO Honolulu, HI	5 Pacific Islands FSC Honolulu, HI	HI • Honolulu U.S. Territories • American Samoa • Northern Mariana Islands • Guam
Greater Atlantic	♦ Greater Atlantic RFO* Gloucester, MA * Regional Fisheries Office	6 Northeast FSC Woods Hole, MA	ME • Orono MA • Woods Hole RI • Narragansett CT • Milford NJ • Highlands
Southeast	♦ Southeast RO St. Petersburg, FL	6 Southeast FSC Miami, FL	NC • Beaufort FL • Panama City • Miami MS • Pascagoula • Stennis LA • Lafayette TX • Galveston

Fishery Management & Advisory Organizations

* Advisory (not management) organization.

Organization	Supported by NOAA Fisheries Science Center(s)	Managed Ecosystem	Managed Stocks
ADFG	Alaska Dept. of Fish & Game 	Gulf of Alaska & Bering Sea - Sub-Arctic	Numerous Alaska coast stocks
CCAMLR	Commission for the Conservation of Antarctic Living Marine Resources 	Antarctic	Toothfishes, Icefish, & Krill
CCSBT	Commission for the Conservation of Southern Bluefin Tuna 	Southern Hemisphere Oceans	Southern bluefin tuna
IATTC	Inter-American Tropical Tuna Commission  	Eastern Pacific Ocean - Sub-Arctic to Tropical	Tunas, Billfish, Sharks
IPHC	Int'l Pacific Halibut Commission 	Pacific Coast - Temperate to Sub-Arctic	Pacific halibut
ISCTTS*	Int'l Scientific Committee for Tuna & Tuna-Like Species in the Northern Pacific Ocean 	Northern Pacific Ocean	Tunas, Billfish, Sharks
NPFC	Northern Pacific FC 	Northern Pacific Ocean - Sub-Arctic to Sub-Tropical	Numerous groundfish, Pelagics, Invertebrates
NPFMC	Northern Pacific FMC 	Gulf of Alaska & Bering Sea - Sub-Arctic	Groundfish, Salmon, Crab, Scallops
PFMC	Pacific FMC   	California Current	Salmon, Groundfish, pelagics, HMS
PSC*	Pacific Salmon Commission   	Pacific Coast, Bays, Rivers, & Estuaries	Pacific salmon stocks
PSMFC*	Pacific States Marine FC   	Pacific Coast, Bays, Rivers, & Estuaries	Numerous Pacific coast stocks
PWS	Pacific Whiting Treaty 	California Current - Temperate	Pacific whiting (Pacific hake)
SPRFMO	Southern Pacific Regional FMO 	 Southern Pacific Ocean	Jack mackerel, Chub mackerel, Squids
WCPFC	Western & Central Pacific FC 	Western & Central Pacific Ocean	Tunas, Billfish, Sharks
WPFMC	Western Pacific FMC 	Insular Pacific Hawaii - Tropical	Bottomfish, Reef fishes, HMS, Invertebrates
ASMFC	Atlantic States Marine FC  	U.S. East Coast, Bays, & Estuaries	Coastal groundfish, Pelagics, Invertebrates, Anadromous fishes
CFMC	Caribbean FMC 	Caribbean Sea - Tropical	Reef fishes, Invertebrates, Migratory pelagics
GOMFMC	Gulf of Mexico FMC 	Gulf of Mexico - Tropical/Subtropical	Reef fishes, Invertebrates, Migratory pelagics
GSMFC	Gulf States Marine FC 	Coastal Gulf of Mexico - Tropical/Subtropical	Gulf menhaden, Blue crab, Many commercial/rec. stocks
ICCAT	Int'l Commission for the Conservation of Atlantic Tunas 	Atlantic Ocean - Sub-Arctic to Tropical	Tunas, Billfish, Sharks
MAFMC	Mid-Atlantic FMC 	Northeast U.S. Continental Shelf (Mid-Atlantic Bight)	Groundfish, Clams & quahogs, Pelagic fishes & squids
NAFO	Northwest Atlantic FO 	Northwest Atlantic Ocean	Groundfish, Squid, Shrimp
NASCO	North Atlantic Salmon Conservation Org. 	Northeast U.S. Continental Shelf (Georges Bank) - Temperate Climate	Georges Bank groundfish stocks shared by U.S. & Canada
NEFMC	New England FMC 	Northeast U.S. Continental Shelf (New England)	New England groundfish, Sea scallops, Red crab, Atlantic herring, Atlantic salmon
SAFMC	South Atlantic FMC 	Southeast U.S. Continental Shelf	Reef fishes, Invertebrates, Migratory pelagics
TMGC	Transboundary Mgmt. Guidance Committee 	Northeast U.S. Continental Shelf (Georges Bank) - Temperate Climate	Georges Bank groundfish stocks shared by U.S. & Canada

Science Centers

 Alaska	 Northeast
 Northwest	 Southeast
 Southwest	 Pacific Islands

Geography

AK - Alaska | CA - California | CT - Connecticut
 FL - Florida | HI - Hawaii | LA - Louisiana
 MA - Massachusetts | ME - Maine | MS - Mississippi
 NC - North Carolina | NJ - New Jersey | NY - New York
 OR - Oregon | PR - Puerto Rico | RI - Rhode Island
 TX - Texas | U.S. - United States
 USVI - U.S. Virgin Islands | WA - Washington

Shorthand / Acronyms

Dept.	Department	HMS	Highly Migratory Species
FC	Fisheries Commission	Int'l	International
FMC	Fisheries Management Council	Isl.	Islands
FMO	Fisheries Management Organization	Mgmt.	Management
FO	Fisheries Organization	Org.	Organization
		Rec.	Recreational (fisheries)

865 Figure 3.1. Summary of NOAA Fisheries' scientific programs that support fisheries management,
866 including the location of regional offices, science centers and their associated field offices, and the
867 various management jurisdictions supported.

868 In many cases, funding has supported decades-long survey monitoring programs of groundfish stocks
869 and their fisheries, thus providing large quantities of information to support data-intensive and
870 sophisticated approaches for conducting stock assessments. In contrast, many tropical-reef-associated
871 fishes (e.g., snappers and groupers) that fall under federal jurisdiction have very limited data on which
872 assessments and management decisions can be based; however, recreational fisheries for some of these
873 stocks are among the most important fisheries in the country. The Southeast and Pacific Islands centers
874 are responsible for many of the reef-associated stocks. Some of these stocks are subject to international
875 harvests of unknown scale, further contributing to assessment and management challenges. Situations
876 where there is little data for a fish stock may be due to limited ship time and resources, diverse species
877 and life history patterns, and complex habitats that are not conducive to data collection. These data
878 gaps substantially limit the types of analyses that can be conducted as well as the degree of certainty
879 surrounding the resulting scientific advice. Although there is little data for some groundfish stocks and
880 sufficient data for some tropical species, these species groups provide general "bookends": Most of the
881 remaining categories of federally managed stocks fall along the range of data availability between these
882 extremes.

883 Coastal mid-water (pelagic) stocks (e.g., sardines, hakes, mackerels, and squids) are assessed in nearly all
884 centers, and several centers conduct assessments of anadromous fish that migrate between marine and
885 freshwater systems, such as Pacific and Atlantic salmon. Stocks within these species groups vary greatly
886 regarding the amount of data available for assessments. NOAA Fisheries also conducts assessments of
887 highly migratory species (HMS; e.g., tunas, billfish, and sharks) in collaboration with international
888 partners, although NOAA Fisheries manages U.S. stocks of Atlantic HMS and contributes to management
889 of HMS in other oceans. Generally, assessments of these stocks rely heavily on fishery-dependent data,
890 because scientific surveys that cover the distribution of wide-ranging species are cost-prohibitive.

891 Beyond species groups, other patterns emerge across regions. For instance, commercial catch may
892 represent a high proportion of landings in some regions (e.g., Alaska, Pacific), whereas recreational
893 interests dominate other regions (e.g., Southeast). The stakeholder group dynamics and complexity vary
894 by region, with numerous state partners and diverse fishing interests along the east coast and generally
895 fewer stakeholder groups along the west coast. In addition, each regional ecosystem has unique
896 characteristics, although national similarities emerge in this area. For instance, cold-water and
897 temperate ecosystems are experiencing a higher degree of warming due to climate change, potentially
898 affecting the distribution and productivity of many valuable stocks (Nye et al., 2009; Pinsky et al., 2013).
899 Warming in tropical regions has been less severe, but coral reef systems can be highly sensitive to small
900 temperature fluctuations and ocean acidification, and localized effects on biodiversity have been
901 observed. Although each stock faces many unique challenges within an assessment context, these
902 regional similarities indicate that numerous issues rise to the national level. Consequently, a main

903 objective of this document is to provide national guidance and potential solutions that may benefit
904 assessments of many stocks across regions.

905 General issues facing the NOAA Fisheries stock assessment enterprise include the following:

- 906 • Centers increasingly require a comprehensive prioritization process to guide assessments and
907 address information gaps. Despite growth in stock assessment capacity, the demand for stock
908 assessments and scientific advice to guide fisheries management exceeds the capacity to meet
909 that demand.
- 910 • After samples and data are collected, additional work is needed before they can be incorporated
911 into assessments. These tasks include quality assurance, processing, and formatting to comply
912 with assessment model requirements. These steps constitute significant bottlenecks that limit
913 assessment throughput in many regions, especially where the input data for the assessment
914 models must be compiled from diverse data sources.
- 915 • Historical stock depletions in U.S. fisheries resulted in many stocks being listed as overfished.
916 Rebuilding an overfished stock takes time, and while a stock is on a rebuilding plan, frequent
917 assessments are required. As a result, past actions have created a bottleneck in the assessment
918 process, increasing the current demand for stock assessments.
- 919 • For certain stocks, the assessment and management process does not meet expectations. For
920 instance, an increase in stock biomass might not be observed despite harvest reductions, or an
921 assessment model may exhibit instability (Chapter 5). These issues can impact the credibility of
922 the science, stakeholder engagement, and overall ability to manage for sustainable fisheries.
- 923 • NOAA Fisheries is responsible for providing scientific advice on numerous stocks for which there
924 is little data. Although annual catch limits are required for all federally managed stocks, a high
925 level of uncertainty exists around estimates of sustainable harvest levels when catches
926 themselves are unknown.
- 927 • Due to their quantitative skills and familiarity with managed stocks, many NOAA assessment
928 scientists are tasked with analyses to support evaluation of management alternatives, resulting
929 in less time to devote to assessment research.
- 930 • The historical investment in fisheries and fishery-independent data has generally been lowest in
931 regions with the highest diversity of fisheries and species. In many cases, the primary data
932 collection programs began after certain target species were already overfished. Data from these
933 programs are therefore highly uncertain and often contentious, and extensive investigations are
934 often requested. As a result, more time, staff, and resources are required to complete
935 assessments in these regions.

936 NOAA Fisheries; stock assessment enterprise successfully supports federal mandates and provides the
937 scientific basis on which most U.S. fisheries have achieved sustainability. This science has helped support
938 millions of jobs and generate hundreds of billions of dollars in economic activity annually. Although
939 NOAA's current stock assessment enterprise functions well, challenges highlighted in this and

940 subsequent chapters warrant attention to further improve long-term sustainability and opportunity for
941 U.S. fisheries.

942 To that end, the remaining chapters in this section identify the primary issues facing NOAA Fisheries'
943 stock assessment enterprise. These chapters describe the current status and challenges associated with
944 the following specific aspects of the stock assessment process:

- 945 • Data collection (Chapter 4)
- 946 • Assessment modeling (Chapter 5)
- 947 • Quality assurance (Chapter 6)

948 This comprehensive evaluation is necessary for determining the highest priority issues.

949 ***References***

950 Nye, J. A, J. S. Link, J. A. Hare, and W. J. Overholtz. 2009. Changing spatial distribution of fish stocks in
951 relation to climate and population size on the Northeast United States continental shelf. *Mar.*
952 *Ecol. Prog. Ser.* 393:111–129. <https://doi.org/10.3354/meps08220>

953 Pinsky, M. L., B. Worm, M. J. Fogarty, J. L. Sarmiento, and S. A. Levin. 2013. Marine taxa track local
954 climate velocities. *Science* 341:1239–1242. <https://doi.org/10.1126/science.1239352>

955 Chapter 4. Data collection to support stock assessments

956

957 Chapter highlights:

- 958 • Data collection for stock assessments is conducted in partnership with numerous management
959 organizations, academic institutions, and stakeholders.
- 960 • Scientific surveys (also called “fishery-independent” surveys) use data collection methods that
961 are tailored to the habitats and biological features of the species.
- 962 • Data collected in cooperation with commercial, recreational, and other fisheries (called fishery-
963 dependent data) are used to monitor catch, effort, incidental catch (called “bycatch”), numbers
964 of fish returned to the sea either dead or alive (called “discards”), and other stock and fishery
965 dynamics.
- 966 • Fundamental data for stock assessments include abundance, biology, and catch (explained later
967 in this chapter).
- 968 • Assessments can also be informed and improved using other data sources, such as ecosystem
969 and socioeconomic data.

970

971 4.1. Data types and collection methods

972

973 NOAA Fisheries' stock assessments are conducted using a wide variety of data that are collected by
974 numerous sources, including federal and state agencies; commercial, recreational, and other fisheries;
975 academic partners; and other stakeholders. All data, regardless of the source, can be considered for
976 inclusion in stock assessments (see Chapter 5 for information about how data are analyzed). As part of
977 the stock assessment review process (Chapter 6), all data and their sources are evaluated to ensure that
978 they are appropriate for an assessment model and were collected using a scientifically sound method.

979

980 Most contemporary stock assessments strive to include three main data types (Mace et al., 2001):

981

982 **Abundance**—changes in relative or absolute numbers or biomass over time

983 **Biology**—demographics and life history

984 **Catch**— fishing effort, bycatch, and discards

985

986 Increasingly, there is an effort to include other data in the stock assessment process: ecosystem data,
987 such as environmental forcing factors and predator–prey dynamics; and socioeconomic data, such as
988 market dynamics and human behavior)

989

990 Data for stock assessments are collected according to two primary strategies: fishery-dependent and
991 fishery-independent. Fishery-dependent data, as the name implies, is collected as part of commercial,
992 recreational, or subsistence/cultural/tribal fisheries. These data provide information on the landings and

993 bycatch of the fishery as well as the biological make-up of the catch (i.e., age, size, sex). Fishery-
994 independent data provide information on the abundance, distribution, and demographics of fish stocks
995 in their natural environments. These data are collected using standardized scientific surveys, which use
996 consistent methods over space and time to maintain objectivity and obtain an accurate perception of
997 wild fish stock dynamics. Fishery-independent data can be collected in cooperation with the fishery and
998 its vessels, but not during normal fishing operations.

999

1000 The remainder of this chapter provides an overview of the specific types of data that are collected for
1001 and used in stock assessments of federally managed species, as well as challenges associated with the
1002 collection and use of those data. This information provides a baseline assessment to help identify data
1003 gaps and potential strategies for improved data collection (covered in detail in Chapter 8). A summary of
1004 the types of data used by NOAA Fisheries to support stock assessments is presented in Table 4.1, which
1005 is categorized by the geographic areas managed by the eight Fishery Management Councils (refer to Fig.
1006 3.1).

1007

1008 Table 4.1. Summary of stock assessment data collection by regional fishery management council, source,
1009 and type of data collected. Fishery-dependent data is categorized into commercial and non-commercial
1010 sources, while fishery-independent data is categorized into extractive and non-extractive sources. Catch
1011 and effort data is typically compiled from all sources, and biological data is obtained from certain
1012 sources, including information on length (L), weight (W), age (A), reproduction (R), and genetics (G). An
1013 "X" indicates the collection of catch information only.

[Implementing a Next Generation Stock Assessment Enterprise: An Update to NOAA Fisheries' Stock Assessment Improvement Plan]

DRAFT DOCUMENT FOR DISCUSSION PURPOSES

Summary Table		North Pacific	Pacific	Western Pacific	Gulf of Mexico	South Atlantic	Caribbean	Mid-Atlantic	New England	
Fishery Dependent	Commercial	Port/Trip/Weighmaster Data	L,W,A,R	L,W	L,A	L,A	L	L,W,A	L,W,A	
		Observer Data	L,W,A,R,G	L,W,A	L,W,A,R	L,W	L,W		L,W,A	L,W,A,R
		Market Data			L,W,A,R,G					
		Vessel Monitoring System	X		X	X	X	X	X	X
		Other (Aerial, Acoustic)	X		X					
	Self-Reported (Logbook, Trip Ticket, Cannery Reports, etc.)	X	X	L,W	X	X	X	W	W	
	Non-Commercial	Intercept	W	L,W	L,W	L,W,A,R,G	L,W,A,R,G		L,W	L,W
		Observers		L,W					L,W	L,W
		Other (Tournament)				X	X	X		
		Self-Reported (Logbook, Phone or Mail survey, etc.)	X	X	X	X	X		X	X
Fishery Independent	Extractive	Trawl	L,W,A,R,G	L,W,A,R,G	X	L,W,R		L,W,A,R	L,W,A,R	
		Longline	L,W,A,R,G	L,W,A,R,G	L,W	L,W,A,R	X		L,W,A,R	
		Dredge							L,W,A,R	L,W,A,R
		Handline, Rod & Reel		L,W,A,R,G	L,W		L,W,A,R			
		Other (Trap, Gillnet)	X			L,W,A,R	X		L,W,A,R	
	Non-extractive	Acoustic	L,W,A,R,G	X	X				X	X
		Camera (stationary)			L	X				
		Camera (mobile)	X	L	L				L	L
		Other (Aerial, Diver, Mark-Recapture)	L		L	X	X	X		

1014
1015
1016
1017
1018
1019
1020
1021
1022
1023
1024
1025
1026
1027
1028
1029
1030
1031
1032
1033
1034

4.1.1 Catch data

Catch refers to the removals due to fishing and, in some cases, research of all fish of a given stock (or stock complex). Catch includes the fish brought to shore for sale or consumption (i.e., landed) as well as fish released at sea that are either already dead or subsequently die (i.e., dead discards). Total catch is an important component of all stock assessments because it indicates the scale of fishing mortality imposed on a stock by commercial, recreational, or tribal fishing efforts. Approaches to estimating the different components of catch vary depending on the type of fishery, with landings typically more easily estimated than discards. The two main types of catch data are commercial and recreational (Table 4.1), although subsistence and tribal fisheries can also contribute to total removals for some stocks. NOAA Fisheries' relies on data from commercial fisheries collected through self-reporting by fishermen, permit holders, or fish dealers, and through data collection and observer programs conducted by NOAA Fisheries, state agencies, tribes, and international partners. Through fishermen's logbooks, the commercial sector self-reports certain data related to catch, such as the total amount of a given species caught (typically in units of weight); catch locations (often following regional reporting areas or grids); and information on fishing techniques (e.g., fishing gear and vessel characteristics, and approaches used in fishing operations). Data on fishing techniques (e.g., gear measurements, fishing location, depth, time, and so on) can be used to estimate and standardize fishing effort across various fishing strategies. Tracking landings for many stocks can be relatively straightforward (e.g., a sum across all sales records), while tracking discards requires estimation.

1035 An important approach for collecting fishery-dependent data is through the use of fishery observers,
1036 who are deployed on commercial fishing and processing vessels to monitor fishing activities. Fishery
1037 observers are crucial for tracking catch and discards, because they are placed on specific fishing vessels
1038 to record catch and discard rates by species and gear type. Those discard rates are expanded by the
1039 total amount of fishing effort within each gear type to generate total discard estimates. Fishery observer
1040 data are also used to validate self-reported discard rates from the commercial fleets. Studies can be
1041 conducted to determine the survival rate of discarded fish, with dead discards being added to the catch
1042 to determine the total. Observers may also sample the landings and discards to collect biological
1043 information, such as the size and age distribution of the catch.

1044
1045 Recreational fisheries can contribute a substantial portion of the total catch of certain stocks when there
1046 are large numbers of recreational fishermen, the recreational sector is allocated a large portion of the
1047 catch, and there are high levels of fishing effort. This is particularly the case in warmer regions of the
1048 U.S. and its territories, such as the southeast where landings from year-round recreational fishing often
1049 exceed commercial landings. The recreational sector is divided into three main subsectors: headboat,
1050 charter vessels, and individual private anglers. Both self-reporting and government programs collect
1051 data from all three subsectors.

1052
1053 The Marine Recreational Information Program (MRIP) is the national data collection program for
1054 recreational data (except in Alaska where the Alaska Department of Fish & Game coordinates this
1055 effort). To estimate the amount of recreational fishing effort in a region, MRIP conducts a telephone-
1056 based survey of registered recreational fishermen (although this survey is transitioning to a mail-based
1057 approach). Additionally, in-person shoreside surveys (called "intercept surveys") are conducted to
1058 estimate the catch and effort associated with individual trips. Finally, multiplying total effort estimated
1059 from the phone/mail surveys by the estimated average catch/effort for each trip provides estimates of
1060 the total recreational catch. Similar to the commercial sector, both landed and discarded fish are
1061 considered, with survival rates of the discarded fish applied to determine the total catch. Further
1062 sampling is also conducted to evaluate the biological characteristics of the fish caught in recreational
1063 fisheries.

1064
1065 When programs are in place, subsistence, cultural, and tribal data are incorporated through either
1066 standard reporting requirements or through specialized data collection systems. The amount of fish
1067 caught in this sector is often small compared with the commercial and recreational sectors. However,
1068 accounting for all catch is important to ensure accuracy in stock assessments. For some stocks, the
1069 subsistence, cultural, and tribal sectors are not sufficiently monitored; in these cases, the data are not
1070 used in assessments.

1071
1072 **4.1.2 Abundance data**

1073 Data on stock abundance over time are important for evaluating a stock's response to fishing and effects
1074 due to other factors. Thus, abundance data directly influences estimates of stock productivity. With the

1075 exception of stocks for which little data are available (called “data-limited” stocks), abundance data are
1076 used in nearly all stock assessments. Abundance data may be relative (e.g., percentage changes in stock
1077 size over time) or absolute (total) abundance (e.g., measures of stock size in terms of total numbers or
1078 weight). When available, absolute abundance estimates are preferred, mainly because they provide a
1079 solid foundation for stock assessment analyses by anchoring the assessment model at a scale that
1080 reflects actual stock biomass. Trends in relative abundance are useful for characterizing fishing effects.
1081 However, estimating the actual scale of the stock can be challenging when using relative abundance,
1082 which can be quantified using numbers of fish as well as weight. Unfortunately, data on absolute
1083 abundance is uncommon because the approach used for calculating it requires information that is
1084 difficult to obtain (e.g., a stock’s total habitat volume, proportion of a stock available to sampling gear,
1085 and the efficiency with which a survey samples the available stock). Despite these challenges, there are
1086 examples of surveys that provide absolute abundance estimates, including bottom trawl surveys for
1087 certain flatfish stocks in the Bering Sea, the yelloweye rockfish survey off southeast Alaska that uses
1088 observations from a remotely operated vehicle, and the sea scallop survey off New England that uses a
1089 towed camera system (HabCam).

1090
1091 Ideally, abundance trends or indices of relative abundance are obtained from scientific surveys.
1092 However, when survey observations are unavailable, fishery-dependent sources can be used. In a
1093 fishery-dependent survey, catch rates such as annual catch per unit of effort (CPUE) serve as
1094 substitutions for relative abundance. For example, catch rates in southeastern headboat fisheries¹⁷ are
1095 used in assessments for multiple reef fish species managed by the South Atlantic Fishery Management
1096 Council (SAFMC) and Gulf of Mexico Fishery Management Council (GOMFMC). Also, because it is cost-
1097 prohibitive to conduct scientific surveys over the distribution of most highly migratory species,
1098 assessments of these stocks rely almost exclusively on fishery-dependent data. Although fishery-
1099 dependent data tends to be readily available as part of routine fishery monitoring, extra caution is
1100 needed when using these data because they are influenced by changes in fishing practices and therefore
1101 may not be objective. To remove potential biases, fishery-dependent CPUE trends are typically
1102 corrected or “standardized” (Maunder and Punt, 2003) before they are used as substitutes for stock
1103 abundance in an assessment.

1104
1105 Abundance trends generated from fishery-independent surveys are preferable to those from fishery-
1106 dependent sources. Fishery-independent surveys are standardized, using consistent methods over time
1107 and space that optimally cover the range of the stock, including areas of lower abundance. These
1108 surveys can be designed such that they balance sampling effort in accordance with regional stock
1109 density (e.g., via adaptive, data-guided approaches that distribute sampling by depth, longitude,
1110 latitude, and/or habitat type). As a result, changes over time in measures of stock abundance or density
1111 from well-designed scientific surveys are assumed to be proportional to changes in stock size.
1112 Nevertheless, scientific surveys do not provide a perfect depiction of stock dynamics: They often target

¹⁷ <http://www.sefsc.noaa.gov/labs/beaufort/sustainable/headboat/>

1113 multiple species and therefore may not follow a design that is ideal for certain species; they may have
1114 fixed designs that do not adapt to changing ecosystems; and they may be affected by changing
1115 priorities, resources, or unforeseen events (e.g., weather and mechanical delays). As a result, to
1116 maximize available resources and provide high-quality abundance data, NOAA Fisheries uses multiple
1117 fishery-independent survey techniques described in Table 4.1.

1118

1119 **4.1.3 Biological data**

1120

1121 Samples of fish collected to support stock assessments can provide information on age, length, weight,
1122 sex, reproduction (e.g., maturity and fertility or fecundity), genetic information, and natural mortality
1123 (i.e., not caused by fishing). Age and length data are used mainly to characterize growth, as well as the
1124 age and size distributions of the assessed stock (including the catch). Weight, sex, and reproductive data
1125 are used to calculate reproductive potential, which may include aspects of egg production and/or total
1126 weight of mature fish (i.e., fish that can breed). Genetic data typically are not used directly in stock
1127 assessments, but can be used to determine stock structure (i.e., the spatial boundaries of a stock) and
1128 evaluate whether the definition for a managed stock is consistent with the biological stock. Finally,
1129 natural mortality, which is difficult to estimate, can be informed by scientific research, such as tag-and-
1130 recapture studies. These studies can be done in advance to provide an estimate of natural mortality, or
1131 the data from the studies can be incorporated into a stock assessment model to help scientists estimate
1132 natural mortality within the assessment. In fact, for most of the biological information listed above, the
1133 samples collected require substantial processing and analysis before these data can be analyzed in a
1134 stock assessment. This step can actually be one of the major bottlenecks in the assessment process.

1135

1136 Fish samples are collected from both fishery-dependent and -independent sources (see Table 4.1).

1137 Samples from fishery-dependent sources are primarily collected by port samplers (intercept surveys at
1138 fishing ports) and at-sea observers. Age, length, and weight are the most common information collected
1139 from both fishery-dependent and -independent sources, with reproductive samples, genetic analyses,
1140 and natural mortality studies occurring less frequently.

1141

1142 It is relatively straightforward to measure a fish's size (length and weight), and these measurements can
1143 be taken at sea or wherever sampling is conducted (e.g., ports). There are multiple approaches to
1144 determining a fish's age, each of which requires substantial processing time in a laboratory. Most
1145 methods involve counting yearly rings found by examining hard parts extracted from fish, such as bones
1146 in the inner ear (otoliths) or, less commonly, fin spines, vertebrae, scales, or other structures.

1147

1148 Reproductive data can be collected from a visual examination, but there is also a need for microscopic
1149 tissue analyses to obtain detailed information on fertility and maturity. Genetic samples are collected
1150 mainly for research studies on fish stock structure than as routine samples collected for stock
1151 assessments. However, genetic studies occur periodically to determine whether management stocks are
1152 appropriately defined and whether data are being collected and analyzed accordingly (e.g., whether

1153 data from separate areas should be analyzed separately or in combination).

1154

1155 Similarly, natural mortality rates are often assumed in stock assessments rather than being influenced or
1156 estimated using assessment data. Thus, research studies that estimate natural mortality of managed
1157 stocks are another important activity that helps structure an assessment, but may only need to be
1158 conducted periodically rather than for every assessment. Within stock assessments, natural mortality is
1159 a simple but important parameter that captures many complex ecological processes that affect survival,
1160 such as predator–prey, disease, toxins, habitat, and other dynamics (except fishing). In fact, all biological
1161 parameters referenced here are affected by ecological processes. As a result, a strong connection exists
1162 between the collection and use of biological data and ecosystem data. In addition, there is a strong need
1163 to conduct research to better understand these relationships, particularly in ecosystems experiencing
1164 rapid change.

1165

1166 **4.1.4. Ecosystem and socioeconomic data**

1167

1168 Not only are there connections between stock biology, productivity, and ecological processes, but stock
1169 abundance data, and even fishery data, are affected by ecosystem and socioeconomic dynamics. For
1170 instance, the proportion of a stock sampled by a survey may be affected by environmental conditions.
1171 Similarly, the location and effectiveness of fishing may be influenced by changing ecosystems, market
1172 dynamics, and fishing strategies. Thus, as we continue to improve our understanding of the connections
1173 between fish, fisheries, and their ecosystems, a clear need emerges to improve assessments by
1174 expanding their scope to incorporate important ecosystem and socioeconomic connections. Our
1175 understanding of these connections is furthered through direct experience and studies that mimic actual
1176 conditions, both of which are based on observations (data) from marine ecosystems and communities.
1177 Although these environments are complex, dynamic, and often difficult to define, substantial progress
1178 has been made in recent decades to understand and describe the marine ecosystems that support
1179 federal fisheries. Nevertheless, significant work still needs to be done to fully characterize these
1180 ecosystems and communities and how they change over time; the data demand required to accomplish
1181 this work is large. Although additional data and research are needed to obtain a more complete
1182 understanding of how ecosystem and socioeconomic drivers affect fish and fisheries, the stock
1183 assessment process is flexible enough to adapt to include new features and data as they become
1184 available. In fact, certain stock assessments conducted by NOAA Fisheries already routinely incorporate
1185 ecosystem information (Chapter 5).

1186

1187 Because there is an increasing need and desire to include additional drivers in stock assessments, the
1188 necessary data are collected to both support routine use in existing assessments and to conduct
1189 research that expands overall knowledge and improves assessments in the future. The primary
1190 ecosystem data being collected (and projected) include diet information to capture predator–prey
1191 dynamics, and physical and chemical ecosystem properties such as temperature, salinity, oxygen
1192 concentration, pH, and seafloor structure. In many cases, existing surveys and research cruises have

1193 been expanded to include ecosystem data collection, thereby maximizing data collection opportunities.
1194 In other cases, cruises dedicated to ecosystem monitoring are conducted to collect key information. A
1195 wide range of data are being collected as part of the Global Ocean Observing System, both by NOAA and
1196 external partners, and these data can serve as key variables in stock assessments. In fact, the
1197 combination of ocean observation systems with survey designs will become increasingly important to
1198 better understand ecosystem and stock dynamics. Another source of ecosystem information that can be
1199 used in stock assessments is an ecosystem model that integrates data and draws conclusions from those
1200 observations to estimate ecosystem-level dynamics. Actually, aspects of ecosystem-level models are
1201 often constructed using the results from analyses of single stock dynamics (e.g., stock assessments).
1202 Therefore, a two-way connection between stock assessment and ecosystem modeling is occurring and is
1203 necessary to develop the science that supports fisheries management.
1204

1205 **4.2.0. Strengths and challenges**

1206

1207 Data collection for U.S. fish stock assessments has evolved into a far-reaching partnership that collects a
1208 high volume of a wide variety of data. Formal programs exist for collecting, processing, and preparing
1209 these data for analysis in stock assessment models. The use of these data in stock assessments is
1210 evaluated in a public forum (see Chapter 6) where all data, including those collected by stakeholders,
1211 are considered for inclusion in assessment models. Thus, the overall data collection process for stock
1212 assessments is sophisticated, transparent, and effective. However, several challenges remain that
1213 require attention:
1214

- 1215 • **It can be difficult to obtain accurate and timely catch data.**

1216 The accuracy and uncertainty surrounding catch and effort data varies considerably from stock
1217 to stock. Assessment models analyze historical catches to understand the impacts of fishing over
1218 time, and for stocks with fisheries that have been monitored since their beginning, catch
1219 histories may be fairly accurate. However, catch monitoring was commonly incomplete or
1220 nonexistent during a fishery's early years. Where historical data are lacking, reconstructions of
1221 catch time series can allow estimation of the full development of some fisheries, especially on
1222 the west coast, but reconstructions are difficult where fishing effort has been high for centuries.
1223 Even today, challenges exist in collecting accurate catch information. Monitoring of stocks that
1224 are harvested internationally can be hindered by jurisdictional issues. In addition, low observer
1225 coverage and lack of knowledge surrounding release mortality in some fisheries create
1226 challenges for characterizing bycatch and whether discarded fish survived. Fishery observer data
1227 are expensive to collect, but need to be increased in some regions of the country (e.g., observer
1228 coverage is approximately 2% for some fisheries in the southeast region). Recreational,
1229 subsistence, and artisanal fisheries are difficult to monitor because they are dispersed and have
1230 limited resources for reporting their catches (Cummings et al., 2015). Further, self-reported data
1231 from fisheries can contain errors, both unintentional and intentional, that require improvements
1232 in the data validation programs and quality assurance/quality control (QA/QC) systems.

1233

1234

1235

1236

1237

1238

1239

1240

Most stock assessment models treat catch information with a high degree of confidence, and inaccurate catch histories add uncertainty and bias to stock assessments. For fisheries with mandatory catch reporting that dates to the start of the fishery, it may be safe to assume that catch histories are fairly accurate. However, there are many instances where uncertainty surrounds catch estimates, so every effort is made to estimate the full extent of fishery removals. Where there is substantial uncertainty surrounding catch histories, assessment models may need enhanced functionality to account for this uncertainty.

1241

1242

1243

1244

1245

1246

1247

1248

1249

One of the largest bottlenecks for assessments in almost every region of the country is related to the processing and delivery of fishery data to assessment modelers. These challenges extend the time required to conduct stock assessments, and may result in large gaps between the final year of data used in the assessment and when the assessment is completed. Increased electronic reporting by commercial fisheries could help create more efficient data access and potentially improve QA/QC. Similarly, the development of automated tools, such as video-based counting of discards by species, could improve the availability and accuracy of data in certain situations.

1250

1251

1252

1253

1254

1255

1256

1257

1258

1259

1260

1261

1262

1263

1264

1265

1266

1267

1268

1269

1270

1271

1272

- **Abundance data is expensive to collect and challenging to extract from fishery catch rates.** Although fishery-independent surveys are preferred over fishery-dependent data sources for providing estimates of stock abundance, challenges also exist in the implementation and use of fishery-independent surveys. First, scientific surveys are often relatively expensive to conduct and require significant ship time, with vessel days typically ranging from approximately \$2,500 per day for smaller, contracted vessels to more than \$15-30,000 per day for larger NOAA ships. In addition to vessel costs, resources are also needed for equipment and supplies, and field, laboratory, and analytical personnel. As a result, annual costs for surveys often range from hundreds of thousands to millions of dollars per year when all costs are considered. Second, the efficiency of gear types used in fishery-independent surveys may vary with the size or age of specimens being caught (e.g., older and larger fish may be better at avoiding capture by trawls due to increased swimming ability or speed with size), or by habitat type (e.g., trawls may be more likely to collect fish over unstructured versus structured habitat). These differences in gear effectiveness, unless known and corrected for, increase the uncertainty around abundance estimates. Thus, to maximize the usefulness of fishery-independent data, gear-specific efficiencies must be assessed—potentially a time-consuming and costly undertaking. Third, surveys can be designed to make the most of information collected on specific species (e.g., dredge surveys for scallops, acoustic surveys for midwater schooling fish); however, most surveys capitalize on the opportunity to collect information on a group of species. This multi-species sampling approach means that data are collected on many more species than under a single-species approach, thereby allowing many more stock assessments to be conducted with minimal increases in resources. However, additional considerations are associated with multi-

1273 species surveys. For instance, the stocks collected may have different distributions, habitat
1274 preferences, daytime patterns, and/or availability to fishing gear. For such surveys, establishing
1275 a survey design that reduces uncertainty surrounding abundance estimates for certain target
1276 species may increase the uncertainty surrounding the abundance of other species. In other
1277 words, because distributions, habitat use patterns, and behaviors vary by species, it is
1278 impossible to design surveys that are ideal for all species sampled. Thus, choices will have to be
1279 made based on species-specific management importance, cost, and logistical considerations.

1280
1281 The primary challenge related to the use of fishery-dependent data for generating estimates of
1282 relative stock abundance is that multiple factors unrelated to stock abundance can affect fishery
1283 catch rates. For instance, changing management actions may alter catch rates due to varying
1284 harvest quotas, size restrictions, temporal and spatial management, and so on. Catch rates are
1285 also affected by fishery-driven changes in practices, such as changes in market prices, fuel
1286 prices, and so on; improvements in fishing strategies and techniques, such as new technologies
1287 that improve catch efficiency; and target species preferences, such as certain stocks may be
1288 targeted after quotas for other stocks are met. Additionally, changes in the completeness of
1289 reporting (e.g., enforcement and compliance with reporting requirements) will affect the data
1290 available on catch rates. Issues related to estimating abundance trends from fishery-dependent
1291 data require considerable attention, because fisheries can adapt their practices to maintain
1292 catch rates, and therefore profits, when stocks decline (e.g., if stock density declines in certain
1293 areas, fishing can be redirected to higher-density areas to maintain efficiency).

- 1294
1295 • **Research is needed to improve biological data.**
1296 Because the types of biological data collected for stock assessments are diverse, so are the
1297 challenges associated with those data. Optimally, all biological data used in stock assessments
1298 should be collected to represent managed stocks as a whole. When only a portion of a stock's
1299 spatial distribution (or ages, sizes, or sexes) are sampled, the biological data must be interpreted
1300 with caution because it may not represent the entire stock. To avoid biased biological data, it is
1301 important to sample the entire stock as much as possible, and to research sampling strategies
1302 and efficiencies to understand which portions of the stock are represented by the data. In some
1303 cases, stock distributions extend across jurisdictional—state, federal, and international—
1304 boundaries, creating sampling and management challenges. However, if a managed stock is not
1305 consistent with a biological stock, then estimates of productivity, stock status, and harvest
1306 recommendations may be inaccurate.

1307
1308 When collecting biological data, it is important to understand the minimum number of samples
1309 needed to sufficiently estimate life history factors. For many stocks, studies to address sampling
1310 intensity have not been conducted, but this research is important for determining and
1311 prioritizing resources needed for data collection in stock assessments. There are potentially
1312 numerous cases of both under- and over-sampling of biological data, affecting not just the time

1313 and resources dedicated to collect the data, but also the time and resources assigned to
1314 processing the samples. In fact, due to limited capacity and substantial processing requirements,
1315 biological sample processing (e.g., counting age rings) is a primary bottleneck in the stock
1316 assessment process.

1317
1318 For aging analyses, species-specific studies are necessary to validate assigned ages; however,
1319 these studies are lacking for many managed stocks. Even when validation studies have occurred,
1320 the determination of an individual fish's age can be challenging, as is often the case for older
1321 individuals of long-lived species. As such, fish are typically aged by multiple analysts with a goal
1322 of reaching high levels (e.g., greater than 90% agreement) among analysts before data are
1323 judged useful for assessments (Campana, 2001).

1324
1325 For reproductive data, there are multiple areas where additional research could improve stock
1326 assessments. For example, more detailed understanding of reproductive capacity by size and
1327 age could result in more accurate assessment models and therefore biological reference points.
1328 Additionally, studies are needed to better understand the timing and duration of spawning
1329 seasons, as well as spawning frequency, particularly for stocks with individuals that spawn
1330 multiple times during a season, and stocks with individuals that do not spawn each season
1331 (Secor, 2008; Rideout and Tomkiewicz, 2011; Fitzhugh et al., 2012). Numerous species,
1332 especially tropical reef fishes, have both male and female reproductive organs (called
1333 "hermaphroditic"), often reaching maturity as one sex and then transitioning to the other. These
1334 species pose unique challenges to modeling reproductive dynamics, and more studies are
1335 needed to develop assessment methods and better understand ratios of males to females in the
1336 stock and how those ratios relate to productivity (Shepherd et al., 2013).

1337
1338 Natural mortality is a critical, although understudied, component of stock assessments. In fact,
1339 many assessments are conducted without any direct measures of natural mortality. Rather,
1340 natural mortality rates often emerge from using data and relationships with other life history
1341 data, other species, or without any supporting information. Thus, there is a clear need for more
1342 tagging studies and tag-and-recapture data to improve natural mortality estimates, as well as a
1343 link to predation and other sources of known, measurable mortality.

1344
1345 • **More ecosystem and socioeconomic data and research are needed.**
1346 Ultimately, to expand the scope of stock assessments, it is not enough that additional data are
1347 available. Scientists also need to understand more fully how fish stocks and fishery dynamics are
1348 affected by ecosystem and socioeconomic factors. For instance, because biological processes
1349 combine a number of ecosystem processes, more research on predator-prey, disease, toxins,
1350 and habitat dynamics would improve understanding of factors that affect stock productivity.
1351 Similarly, research into human and market dynamics is valuable to help understand and predict
1352 fisheries. Even without including ecosystem or socioeconomic data, many assessments already

1353 account for change caused by these drivers, such as through variability in weight by age or
1354 changing fishing practices (e.g., selectivity patterns). However, further research will help
1355 improve an understanding of the key drivers to improve assessments and the resulting advice.
1356 Improving prediction skills is particularly important in the context of climate change, because a
1357 stock's historical responses to fishing, which are evaluated in an assessment, may not reflect
1358 future responses.

1359
1360 To expand assessments to be more holistic, researchers need to increase their collection of
1361 ecosystem and socioeconomic data. Although beneficial partnerships are in place, and many
1362 existing data collection efforts are being leveraged to collect these additional data, there simply
1363 is not enough data to fully characterize complex and multifaceted ecosystems and communities.
1364 Thus, additional data collection and research efforts are needed. However, the information
1365 currently available can be used and is being used in assessments now. With innovative science
1366 (Chapter 9) and strategic prioritization (Chapter 10), ecosystem and socioeconomic data can be
1367 incorporated where most needed.

1368
1369 **References**

- 1370
1371 Behrenfeld, M. J., and P. G. Falkowski. 1997. Photosynthetic rates derived from satellite-based
1372 chlorophyll concentration. *Limnol. Oceanogr.* 42:1–20. <https://doi.org/10.4319/lo.1997.42.1.0001>
1373
1374 Campana, S. E. 2001. Accuracy, precision and quality control in age determination, including a review of
1375 the use and abuse of age validation methods. *J. Fish Biol.* 59:197–242. [https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1095-
1376 8649.2001.tb00127.x](https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1095-8649.2001.tb00127.x)
1377
1378 Cummings, N. J., M. Karnauskas, W. Harford, W. L. Michaels, and A. Acosta. 2015. Report of a GCFI
1379 workshop: strategies for improving fishery-dependent data for use in data-limited stock assessments in
1380 the wider Caribbean region. NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-SEFSC-681, 25 p.
1381 <https://doi.org/10.7289/V5BK19BN>
1382
1383 Erisman, B. E., L. G. Allen, J. T. Claisse, D. J. Pondella II, E. F. Miller, and J. H. Murray. 2011. The illusion of
1384 plenty: hyperstability masks collapses in two recreational fisheries that target fish spawning
1385 aggregations. *Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci.* 68:1705–1716. <https://doi.org/10.1139/f2011-090>
1386
1387 Fitzhugh, G. R., K. W. Shertzer, G. T. Kellison and D. M. Wyanski. 2012. Review of size- and age-
1388 dependence in batch spawning: implications for stock assessment of fish species exhibiting
1389 indeterminate fecundity. *Fish. Bull.* 110:413–425.
1390
1391 Hilborn, R. and C. J. Walters, eds. 1992. Quantitative fisheries stock assessment: choice, dynamics and
1392 uncertainty, 570 p. Chapman and Hall, NY.

- 1393
1394 Hill, K. T., P. R. Crone, D. A. Demer, J. Zwolinski, E. Dorval, and B. J. Macewicz. Assessment of the Pacific
1395 sardine resource in 2014 for U.S.A. management in 2014–2015. NOAA Tech. Memo. NOAA-TM-NMFS-
1396 SWFSC-531, 125 p.
1397
1398 Ianelli, J. N., A. B. Hollowed, A. C. Haynie, F. J. Mueter, and N. A. Bond. 2011. Evaluating management
1399 strategies for eastern Bering Sea walleye pollock (*Theragra chalcogramma*) in a changing environment.
1400 ICES J. Mar. Sci. 68:1297–1304. <https://doi.org/10.1093/icesjms/fsr010>
1401
1402 Karnauskas, M., C. B. Paris, G. Zapfe, A. Gruss, J. F. Walter, and M. J. Schirripa. 2013. Use of the
1403 Connectivity Modeling System to estimate movements of gag grouper (*Mycteroperca microlepis*)
1404 recruits in the northern Gulf of Mexico. SEDAR33-DW18, 10 p.
1405
1406 Karnauskas, M., J. F. Walter III, and C. B. Paris. 2013. Use of the Connectivity Modeling System to
1407 estimate movements of red snapper (*Lutjanus campechanus*) recruits in the northern Gulf of Mexico.
1408 SEDAR31-AW10, 17 p.
1409
1410 Link, J. S., A. Bundy, W. J. Overholtz, N. Shackell, J. Manderson, D. Duplisea, J. Hare, M. Koen-Alonso, and
1411 K. D. Friedland. 2011. Ecosystem-based fisheries management in the Northwest Atlantic. Fish Fish.
1412 12:152–170. <https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1467-2979.2011.00411.x>
1413
1414 Mace, P. M., N. W. Bartoo, A. B. Hollowed, P. Kleiber, R. D. Methot, S. A. Murawski, J. E. Powers, and G.
1415 P. Scott. 2001. Marine fisheries Stock Assessment Improvement Plan: report of the National Marine
1416 Fisheries Service National Task Force for improving fish stock assessments. NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-
1417 F/SPO-56, 75 p.
1418
1419 Maunder, M. N., and A. E. Punt. 2004. Standardizing catch and effort data: a review of recent
1420 approaches. Fish. Res. 70:141–159. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.fishres.2004.08.002>
1421
1422 Pinsky, M. L., B. Worm, M. J. Fogarty, J. L. Sarmiento, and S. A. Levin. 2013. Marine taxa track local
1423 climate velocities. Science 341:1239–1242. <https://doi.org/10.1126/science.1239352>
1424
1425 Polovina, J. J., J. P. Dunne, P. A. Woodworth, and E. A. Howell. 2011. Projected expansion of the
1426 subtropical biome and contraction of the temperate and equatorial upwelling biomes in the North
1427 Pacific under global warming. ICES J. Mar. Sci. 68:986–995. <https://doi.org/10.1093/icesjms/fsq198>
1428
1429 Polovina, J. J., and E. A. Howell. 2005. Ecosystem indicators derived from satellite remotely sensed
1430 oceanographic data for the North Pacific. ICES J. Mar. Sci. 62:319–327.
1431 <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.icesjms.2004.07.031>
1432

- 1433 Rideout, R. M., and J. Tomkiewicz. 2011. Skipped spawning in fishes: more common than you
1434 might think. *Mar. Coast. Fish.* 3:176–189. <https://doi.org/10.1080/19425120.2011.556943>
1435
- 1436 58th Northeast regional stock assessment workshop (58th SAW) assessment report. 2014. NFSC ref. doc.
1437 14-04, part A, butterfly stock assessment for 2014, 335 P.
1438
- 1439 Secor, D. H. 2008. Influence of skipped spawning and misspecified reproductive schedules on biological
1440 reference points in sustainable fisheries. *Trans. Amer. Fish. Soc.* 137:782–789.
1441 <https://doi.org/10.1577/T07-105.1>
1442
- 1443 Shepherd, G. R., K. Shertzer, J. Coakley, and M. Caldwell, eds. 2013. Modeling protogynous
1444 hermaphrodite fishes workshop; Raleigh, NC, 29–30 August, 33 p. [Available from Mid-Atlantic Fishery
1445 Management Council, 800 North State Street, Suite 201, Dover, DE 19901 or at
1446 <http://www.mafmc.org/workshop/2012/prot-herm-workshop.>]
1447
- 1448 Wilderbuer, T. K., D. G. Nichol, and J. Ianelli. 2013. North Pacific stock assessment and fishery evaluation
1449 reports 4: assessment of the yellowfin sole stock in the Bering Sea and Aleutian Islands, 90 p. [Available
1450 at <http://www.afsc.noaa.gov/REFM/Docs/2013/BSAlyfin.pdf>].
1451
1452

1453 Chapter 5. Analytical tools

1454 Chapter highlights

- 1455 • Stock assessment models are specifically designed to produce results needed by fishery managers.
- 1456 • A range of models is available to suit the diversity in available data for each stock.
- 1457 • Models that use limited data produce management advice by making strong assumptions; models
1458 that use more types of data can estimate the effects of more factors on a given fish population.
- 1459 • Characterizing the uncertainty in model outputs is important for evaluating the risk associated
1460 with various management strategies.

1461 5.1. Introduction

1462 This chapter provides an overview of the analytical tools used in NOAA's fish stock assessments. Many of
1463 these tools are highly technical, and therefore, this information is intended for those already familiar
1464 with these methods, or for those interested in an introduction to the mechanics of stock assessment
1465 modeling. The analytical work conducted by stock assessment scientists is designed to translate data
1466 from fisheries, surveys, and biological studies to characterize the status of a fish stock and to provide
1467 catch forecasts needed by fishery managers. These analyses consist of three principal stages:

- 1468 1. Data preparation
- 1469 2. Modeling and forecasting of fishery and population dynamics
- 1470 3. Risk analysis and decision support

1471 In stage one, the many samples collected each year from fisheries and surveys need to be processed and
1472 summarized by a few values (e.g., the age composition of the catch for a given year) that are input to a
1473 stock assessment model. During the second stage, development, calibration, application, and
1474 forecasting of these models are major activities for the stock assessment programs. Then, in the third
1475 stage, the uncertainty surrounding stock assessment results is explored to calculate tradeoffs and risks
1476 and communicate them to fishery managers and the affected public. In addition to these three stages of
1477 assessment analyses, which are described in more detail in this chapter, stock assessment modelers also
1478 conduct a wide range of research and perform management support activities that use their analytical
1479 skills. These activities range from investigations of ecosystem and habitat factors affecting fish stock
1480 dynamics, to analyzing bycatch patterns in fisheries. Opportunities to conduct research allow stock
1481 assessment scientists to remain creative, innovative, and at the forefront of stock assessment science.
1482 The distinction between stock assessments and general scientific research and investigations into fish
1483 population dynamics is that the results of stock assessment analyses are tailored for delivery to fishery
1484 managers. Thus, NOAA Fisheries' stock assessment scientists conduct world-class fisheries research
1485 while also participating in operational science (i.e., stock assessments) that deliver quality scientific
1486 advice to fishery managers.

1487 **5.2. Preparing stock assessment input data**

1488 As described in Chapter 4, a variety of data (i.e., samples) are collected to support stock assessments.
1489 However, the samples collected by these various programs may not be available as input into stock
1490 assessment models until they have been processed. This processing includes laboratory analysis of
1491 samples and organizing the data so they are appropriate for use in assessment models. For example,
1492 catch information recorded from thousands of fishing trips is combined into a measure of total (usually
1493 annual) catch by each fleet. Similarly, survey observations from hundreds of locations are totaled into a
1494 measure of stock abundance, again usually annual, throughout the range of the survey. This
1495 combination typically involves sophisticated statistical models often designed and implemented by stock
1496 assessment scientists (see review by Maunder and Punt, 2004).

1497 Processing data for generating catch-age compositions (and catch-length compositions) requires
1498 analytical thoroughness and an incorporation of the sampling process (Kimura, 1989; Dorn, 1992). The
1499 fishery data on catch and its size and age composition can come from many sources including NOAA,
1500 commission or state-specific landings receipts, NOAA fishery observer programs, state-specific biological
1501 sampling, diverse recreational fishery sectors, and so on. Merging these raw data into statistically sound
1502 estimates of fleet-specific catch statistics can be difficult and time-consuming for stock assessment
1503 scientists and data analysts. The need to improve the efficiency of this process so that data are readily
1504 (and publicly) available for assessments was a major finding of NOAA's stock assessment program
1505 reviews in 2013¹⁸. In certain scenarios, standardized, immediately usable data systems could help relieve
1506 this drain on the assessment process and potentially result in more timely assessments for more stocks.
1507 However, frequent changes in fishery management and fishermen's behavior hinder the development of
1508 automated collection systems for fishery data.

1509 Another major effort is developing methods to create a measure of stock abundance from raw fishery
1510 logbook or survey sample data. Here, statistical methods such as generalized linear models have been
1511 useful (Maunder and Punt, 2004), and the next wave of innovation in this area may be fully geostatistical
1512 methods (Thorson et al., 2015). Pre-processing data before using it in models also requires consideration
1513 of the appropriate observation uncertainties (Francis, 2011). Finally, statistical methods are used for
1514 estimating or reconstructing historical catches. The reliability of these methods can vary over time and
1515 by region (e.g., if the catch accounting method involves data collections at different spatial scales,
1516 assumptions about distributing can be critical).

1517 **5.3. Stock Assessment Models**

1518 **5.3.1. Principles**

1519 Population dynamics models produce the main stock assessment results. Information fed into these
1520 models is obtained from the pre-processing models discussed earlier. Population dynamics models are

¹⁸ <https://www.st.nmfs.noaa.gov/science-program-review/program-review-reports/index>

1521 based on realistic, but simplified, representations of the factors affecting the productivity and mortality
1522 of fish stocks. In addition, these models are designed to produce estimates of current, historical, and
1523 future fish abundance and fishing mortality.

1524 Population dynamics models are standardized using the time series of abundance, biological, and catch
1525 data. The quantity and quality of these data and the amount of variation (contrast) they show over time
1526 influences the types of models that are used and how well they can be expected to perform (Maunder
1527 and Piner, 2014). Each stock provides unique data for an assessment, including the research conducted
1528 to support assumptions underlying stock and fishery dynamics. Thus, the choice of stock assessment
1529 model and model configuration within the assessment framework is governed by a stock-specific,
1530 scientific, decision-making process that attempts to identify the most appropriate analytical approach.
1531 Implementing this process requires strong technical expertise and is a fundamental role of the stock
1532 assessment analyst. Numerous choices are available to assessment analysts, and Table 5.1 provides a
1533 general summary of the range of options.

1534 Most stock assessment analyses are statistically based, so the general conceptual approach to running
1535 or “fitting” an assessment model follows basic statistical modeling practices. This process involves the
1536 following general steps:

- 1537 1. Specifying mathematical equations (models) that are assumed to represent stock and fishery
1538 dynamics
- 1539 2. Inputting relevant data pertaining to stock and fishery dynamics
- 1540 3. Applying statistical methods that calibrate the mathematical models by comparing the
1541 processes defined by the equations to the patterns observed in the data.

1542 The specific details about each step of the modeling process vary with the amount and type of data
1543 available for an assessment (Figure 5.1). For instance, most data-rich assessments are age (or length)
1544 based, and therefore provide a more detailed evaluation of the effects of fishing and other factors on
1545 the stock. To achieve this level of detail, the mathematical models need to be created to track cohorts
1546 (or length classes) over time, which results in a relatively large number of model parameters that need
1547 to be estimated (informed by data) or specified (i.e., assumed). This type of configuration requires age-
1548 (or length-) specific data, as well as relatively complex statistical methods capable of calibrating models
1549 with many parameters. One benefit of a more detailed model is that generally, there are fewer strong
1550 assumptions about stock dynamics required. With data-moderate assessments, there are typically
1551 observations of total catch as well as changes in abundance, but the data are aggregated across ages
1552 (sizes), so these assessments inherently assume that the dynamics apply to all ages and sizes of
1553 individuals in the stock equally. However, the benefits of a simple model include easier understanding,
1554 generally simpler statistical methods which can result in fewer complications during application (i.e.,
1555 models that are easier fit), and often a straightforward calculation of key results. For instance, solutions
1556 for maximum sustainable yield (MSY) reference points which form the basis for stock status
1557 determinations and setting sustainable catch limits can be directly calculated with biomass dynamics

1558 models (see Section 5.3.2). With data-rich assessments, these reference points are often determined in
1559 a secondary step that involves simulation analyses based on the results obtained from fitting the
1560 assessment model.

1561 Data-limited approaches are used for many U.S. stocks and may be used for a variety of reasons. The
1562 most common reason is when there is not enough data for more complete assessments. However, data-
1563 limited methods are also employed as a stop-gap for setting catch limits between more complete
1564 assessments and as a default approach when a more complete assessment has issues and is not deemed
1565 appropriate for management. There are numerous data-limited methods available that differ in their
1566 data requirements and underlying assumptions (Newman et al., 2014). Several methods rely only on
1567 catch data, while others incorporate life-history information or apply multipliers to trends in biomass. All
1568 data-limited approaches rely on fairly strong assumptions about stock dynamics (e.g., the amount that a
1569 stock has depleted over time) and therefore should not be considered a long-term approach to support
1570 sustainable management of important stocks.

1571 5.3.2. Outputs and uses

1572 Stock assessment models are designed to give fishery managers numerical estimates of relevant fishery
1573 management quantities. Common outputs and their uses include the following:

- 1574 1) Reference Points:
- 1575 a) F_{MSY} —The average fishing rate, or suitable proxy (e.g., $F_{40\%}$), that would produce the maximum
1576 sustainable yield. This serves as the limit beyond which overfishing is considered to occur.
- 1577 b) B_{MSY} —The average stock abundance when fishing at F_{MSY} (the associated Minimum Stock Size
1578 Threshold (MSST) below which the stock is considered overfished is often a specified fraction of
1579 B_{MSY} or its proxies).
- 1580 2) Stock Status Determination—The comparison of current stock abundance and fishing rates
1581 produced by an assessment model with the associated fishing and biomass reference points.
- 1582 3) Harvest Control Rule—A formula that calculates a limit or target catch level and is based on a stock's
1583 abundance and other factors (e.g., scientific uncertainty, risk policy). Many control rules strive to
1584 attain a large fraction of MSY while keeping the risk of overfishing at an agreed level. National
1585 Standard 1 Guidelines require that scientific uncertainty be taken into account when calculating
1586 target harvest policies.
- 1587 4) Harvest Recommendation—Level of catch recommended for achieving the objectives of the harvest
1588 policy, typically based on forecasts of abundance trends. For federal fishery managers, this value
1589 provides the technical input needed by a council's Scientific and Statistical Committee to
1590 recommend an acceptable biological catch (ABC) to its council.

1591 As described in more detail in Section 5.4, the uncertainties surrounding outputs 1 through 4 should be
1592 characterized and measured as completely as possible to support effective and robust management
1593 decisions. Because stock assessment models are the foundation for determining stock status and setting

1594 catch limits, there is a high level of public scrutiny and strong peer review requirements (see Chapter 6).
1595 Additionally, assessment models and their outputs have broader applications (Section 1.2).

1596 Many demands are placed on the stock assessment modeling community. Some managers and
1597 stakeholders want simpler methods that are quick to implement and transparent to a wider community,
1598 while others want methods that are more comprehensive and/or more heavily evaluated during each
1599 application. There is also interest in more spatial resolution to better match the on-the-water
1600 observations of local fishermen. Ideally, there is a preference for more complete measures of
1601 uncertainty to better implement precautionary approaches and avoid surprises as estimates change
1602 over time. No one modeling approach will satisfy all these demands, but progress is being made in
1603 several areas highlighted next and in chapter 9.

1604 **5.3.3. Categories**

1605 A range of stock assessment models has been designed to provide tools across a variety of scenarios,
1606 mainly related to data availability (Table 5.1). Where data are limited, or when simple analyses are used
1607 for monitoring between more comprehensive assessments, modeling approaches tend to be relatively
1608 simple and rely on fairly rigid assumptions about stock and fishery dynamics (Categories 1 and 2 from
1609 Table 5.1). In these cases, assumptions about important factors are often based on knowledge from
1610 stocks with similar attributes, so scenarios with limited data can still produce stock-specific results.
1611 Many stocks in U.S. managed fisheries do not have sufficient data for conducting stock assessments that
1612 provide typical management advice (i.e., stock status and catch limits/targets). However, the U.S.
1613 requirement to establish annual catch limits (ACLs) in all fisheries has forced a rapid response by stock
1614 assessment scientists to develop and advance methodology for data-limited stocks (Cummings et al.,
1615 2014; "Data-Limited" methods in Table 5.1). A study of methods for determining ACLs in the U.S.
1616 (Berkson and Thorson, 2015) indicated that 52% rely on methods that consider only catch data to
1617 provide management advice.

1618 When a moderate amount of historical data are available, such as catches over time and an indicator of
1619 changes in stock abundance (or relative abundance) over time, then aggregate biomass dynamics
1620 models can be used (category 3 from Table 5.1). These models calculate how large the stock must have
1621 been to have exhibited the trends observed in the abundance data while the observed catch was being
1622 removed. These estimates are conditioned on population turnover rates indicated by available biological
1623 data.

1624 Moving up the data availability spectrum, a third class of stage-based approaches uses the distributions
1625 of ages or lengths in the fishery harvests and/or surveys (categories 4 through 6 in Table 5.1). Age
1626 and/or size data are particularly useful because they facilitate estimates of total mortality rates for fish
1627 stocks (i.e., the proportional decline in fish abundance with age indicates the magnitude of fishing plus
1628 natural mortality). When eras of high and low mortality coincide with eras of higher and lower levels of
1629 catch, these methods can infer the size of the stock from which the catches were taken. When historical

1630 time series of age/size data are available, the models can also calculate, by age/size, the degree to which
1631 fish are available to (selected by) a fishery or survey. Further, age/size time series also allow for
1632 calculation of annual fluctuations in the amount of young fish entering the stock (i.e., recruitment) as
1633 well as annual fluctuations in body growth. Additional expansions and information, such as spatial
1634 model configurations and inclusion of ecosystem data, can be considered for any assessment model
1635 framework.

1636 **Table 5.1.** Categories of stock assessment models with focus on the population dynamics
1637 structure (e.g., growth rates, mortality, reproductive characteristics), data requirements
1638 (minimum and data typically used), and types of management advice that can be provided
1639 with associated limitations. “Catch” refers to total catch (including discards to the extent
1640 feasible) in biomass or numbers but without information on age and/or length structure.
1641 “Abundance index” generally refers to a relative index assumed to be proportional to the
1642 abundance of a fish stock as modified by the assumed or estimated size and age selectivity of
1643 the fishery or survey that is the source of the data.
1644

1. Data-Limited

- **Example methods:** Depletion-Based Stock Reduction Analysis (DBSRA; Dick and MacCall, 2011); Depletion Corrected Average Catch (DCAC; * MacCall, 2009); Surplus Production MSY (Martell and Froese, 2013); Egg-Escapement, Mean Length Estimation (Gedamke and Hoenig, 2006)
- **Population dynamics:** Typically not modeled, but some methods include basic assumptions and expert opinion on natural mortality, stock depletion, sustainability of recent catch, and others
- **Data requirements:** Total catch and/or other biological information as available
- **Management advice:** Catch recommendations and sustainability of recent average catch
- **Limitations:** Results are a placeholder for management advice until direct information on stock status and/or trends can be obtained

2. Index-Based

- **Example methods:** Basic linear models and time series analyses, An Index Method (AIM; NOAA Fisheries Toolbox*)
- **Population dynamics:** Typically not modeled
- **Data requirements:** Time series of total catch and/or stock abundance
- **Management advice:** Mostly qualitative advice about stock trends and whether management action is triggered as part of a harvest control rule (e.g., abundance index goes below a prespecified threshold)
- **Limitations:** Does not provide estimates of stock biomass

3. Aggregate Biomass Dynamics

- **Example methods:** Schaefer or Pella-Tomlinson Production Models (ASPIC; * Prager, 1994); delay-difference models (Collie and Sissenwine, 1983; Deriso, 1990)
- **Population dynamics:** Aggregate biomass dynamics with minimal parameters (carrying capacity— K , intrinsic population growth rate— r , initial biomass— B_0 , and a catchability coefficient— q , related to fishing mortality or survey abundance index); delay-difference models expand on this to include at least two life stages and assumptions about growth and natural mortality
- **Data requirements:** Time series of total catch and at least one index of stock abundance; delay-difference models typically have abundance indices for each life stage, and information on growth and natural mortality
- **Management advice:** Estimates of maximum sustainable yield (MSY), current biomass (B) relative to B_{MSY} , current fishing rate (F) relative to F_{MSY} , and the current catch that corresponds to F_{MSY}
- **Limitations:** Requires contrast in the data (i.e., periods of high and low catch and biomass, as well as variability in the abundance index over time); typically ignores biological information regarding individual body growth, maturity, and natural mortality rate; provides more detailed population dynamics but still aggregates dynamics within life stages

4. Virtual Population Analysis (VPA)

- **Example methods:** VPA and Dual Zone VPA (ADAPT & VPA-2BOX; NOAA Fisheries Toolbox*)
- **Population dynamics:** Starting from the last year in the data and the oldest age for each cohort in that year, abundance-at-age is calculated backwards in time using catch-at-age and natural mortality; models are often tuned by fitting to age-specific abundance indices
- **Data requirements:** Complete, high-quality catch-at-age and weight-at-age data for every time step and at least one abundance index for calibration ("tuning" in a VPA context); age-specific abundance indices are often used
- **Management advice:** Time series of biomass and fishing rates are primary sources of advice; however, model output can be analyzed separately to evaluate stock-recruitment relationships; these additional analyses help provide complete advice on stock status and forecasts of catch limits and targets
- **Limitations:** Obtaining complete catch-at-age data that can be considered known without error at every time step is not realistic for many stocks; estimation techniques often use specific approaches that create challenges for characterizing uncertainty (e.g., confidence intervals); method performs best when the fishery is the dominant source of mortality (i.e., fishing mortality > natural mortality)

5. Statistical Catch-at-Length (SCAL)

- **Example methods:** Statistical Catch-At-Length (SCALE; NOAA Fisheries Toolbox*); Stock Synthesis (SS;* Methot and Wetzel, 2013); MultifanCL (Fournier et al., 1990); crustacean models (Zheng et al., 1995; Chen et al., 2005)
- **Population dynamics:** Length-structured, with a length-based transition matrix to update the stock's length composition between consecutive time steps; can incorporate natural mortality, growth, recruitment, and fishing mortality at length; the inclusion of size data from fishery or survey catches allows for the estimation of size selectivity patterns by fleets/surveys and the time sequence of recruitments
- **Data requirements:** Total catch by fleet, at least one abundance index, length composition data from fleets/surveys (some missing data allowed); may allow the catch data to be separated into landings and discards
- **Management advice:** Stock status and forecasts of catch limits and targets relative to management reference points (if stock-recruitment dynamics are embedded); otherwise advice is limited to estimated time series of biomass and fishing rates
- **Limitations:** Typically less informative about recruitment and mortality of older individuals than when age data are available

6. Statistical Catch-at-Age (SCAA)

- **Example methods:** Stock Synthesis (SS;* Methot and Wetzel, 2013); Age-Structured Assessment Program (ASAP;* Legault and Restrepo, 1999); Assessment Model for Alaska (AMAK#), Beaufort Assessment Model (BAM; Craig, 2012); MultifanCL (Fournier and Archibald, 1992; Fournier et al., 1990); C++ Algorithmic Stock Assessment Library (CASAL; Bull et al., 2012)
- **Population dynamics:** Age-structured, incorporating natural mortality, growth, recruitment and recruitment variability, fishing mortality, and selectivity
- **Data requirements:** Total catch by fleet, at least one abundance index, samples of age compositions by fleet/survey; missing data are allowed (in contrast to VPA); some implementations allow the catch data to be separated into landings and discards
- **Management advice:** Stock status and forecasts of catch limits and targets relative to management reference points (if stock-recruitment dynamics are embedded); otherwise advice is limited to estimated time series of biomass and fishing rates
- **Limitations:** Flexibility of software package to include additional factors is highly diverse and difficult to categorize; direct estimates of MSY-based quantities depend on whether stock-recruitment dynamics are included

1647 *<http://nft.nefsc.noaa.gov/index.html>

1648 #<https://github.com/NMFS-toolbox/AMAK>

1649 5.3.4. Application and choice

1650 Assessment models use advanced statistical and computational methods to enable estimation of the
1651 parameters of the model, which can be as many as thousands in the most data-rich and flexible cases.
1652 When detailed, flexible models are applied to relatively simple data sets, some factors in the models
1653 need to be specified as constants or the models will need extra constraints/penalties on parameters for
1654 those factors to prevent the results from becoming highly uncertain or illogical. Conversely, when
1655 simpler model configurations are confronted with more detailed data, they may not adequately
1656 represent the processes that created some of the detailed patterns in the data. Therefore, they can
1657 produce biased results. In general, model choice is governed by data availability, but another important
1658 consideration relates to the *principal of parsimony*. The level of detail in the assessment relates to the
1659 scale of investment in data collection; thus, to maximize limited resources, assessments should be as
1660 simple as possible while achieving the management objectives. In many cases, age-structured data and
1661 other information are important for achieving optimum yield from fish stocks. However, for less
1662 important stocks, it may not be worth the investment to collect such detailed data.

1663 Integrated analysis models, such as Stock Synthesis (Methot and Wetzel, 2013), provide flexibility to
1664 combine aspects of both age-structured and biomass dynamics models. These methods are frequently
1665 used in stock assessments because they can be adjusted to match a variety of data availability scenarios.
1666 Integrated analysis here refers to the ability to simultaneously include length and age, tag–recapture,
1667 and other data. Because these are flexible models, programs such as Stock Synthesis support a variety of
1668 configurations to implement many of the model categories in Table 5.1, particularly the SCAA and SCAL
1669 models. One potential drawback of integrated analysis models is that the flexibility may result in
1670 implementation errors or configurations that are too detailed given the data available. Drawbacks such
1671 as these emphasize the importance of documentation, best practices, and user guides for stock
1672 assessment methodology.

1673 5.4. Assessment uncertainty and decision support

1674

1675 5.4.1. Characterizing scientific uncertainty

1676

1677 It is not possible to observe every process affecting every individual fish in a stock (without error);
1678 therefore, there will always be some degree of uncertainty surrounding stock assessment results. This
1679 uncertainty can be reduced by improving and expanding observing systems and by conducting research
1680 to understand processes. However, acknowledging and characterizing uncertainty is an integral part of
1681 fisheries management. Because information is not perfect and complete, the advice that results from
1682 analyzing that information may not be perfect either. Therefore, uncertainty is characterized and
1683 adjustments are made to buffer against negative outcomes, such as overfishing, when information is not
1684 perfect (Methot et al., 2014).

1685

1686 Six types of uncertainty that commonly receive attention in fisheries (Peterman, 2004; Link et al., 2012)
1687 include the following:

- 1688 1. Process error (or uncertainty due to natural variability)
- 1689 2. Observation error (or measurement or estimation uncertainty)
- 1690 3. Structural complexity (or model uncertainty)
- 1691 4. Communication uncertainty (issues related to interpretation and use of results)
- 1692 5. Objective uncertainty (or lack of clarity on goals and objectives, often included with outcome
1693 uncertainty)
- 1694 6. Outcome uncertainty (or management performance uncertainty)

1695

1696 From this list, 1–3 may be accounted for within stock assessments, where 4–6 are not typically
1697 addressed during analyses. For process and observation error, approaches that are likely to characterize
1698 uncertainty most appropriately are models that are explicitly statistical that allow for sufficient flexibility
1699 to capture both sources of error at the same time as. However, simpler models can provide reliable
1700 fisheries management advice, especially if they have been evaluated through simulation testing and/or
1701 decision support analyses (see Section 5.4.2).

1702 Several statistical methods that are used frequently can help address and measure uncertainty in stock
1703 assessments. For instance, Bayesian statistics provide an opportunity to use prior knowledge about a
1704 certain process or model parameter to help with estimation in the assessment model. This method is
1705 especially useful when there is not enough information in the input data to estimate assessment
1706 parameters, and previous analyses do not provide enough certainty to specify the exact value of the
1707 parameters at the start of the assessment. The combined use of prior knowledge and information in the
1708 data supports an appropriate treatment of uncertainty in many assessments.

1709 Another statistical approach that is becoming more common in stock assessments is the use of random
1710 effects, or state–space models. With this technique, assessment processes and parameters can be
1711 treated not only as fixed estimates, but also as parameters that change over time and/or space

1712 according to a random process. Previously, state–space techniques were too cumbersome to implement
1713 in relatively complex stock assessment models; however, recent developments in computing power and
1714 statistical software have made it possible to do so. Assessments can now account for shifts in population
1715 and/or fishery dynamics without a detailed understanding of the cause of those shifts. Thus, state–space
1716 models offer a sophisticated approach to addressing uncertainty that accounts for both observation and
1717 process errors and balances total uncertainty between these two components. Although full state–space
1718 stock assessments are not yet commonly used in the United States, these assessments provide a very
1719 active area of research and development.

1720 A commonly used approach to account for process error in U.S. stock assessments is model sensitivity
1721 analyses. This technique evaluates the structural uncertainty of models. In other words, this approach
1722 tests to see how the results compare when other mathematical equations are used, data are added to
1723 or eliminated from the assessment, different values of parameters are selected, or different
1724 assumptions about model parameters are considered. Commonly this approach narrows the choice to
1725 one or a small set of plausible model configurations, thus arriving at what is considered a good model.
1726 However, resting on a single “base” model ignores the total uncertainty across the set of plausible
1727 models. In some cases, assessments try to average results across the suite of models, but more technical
1728 guidance is needed on how to do this in a stock assessment context. Although climate and weather
1729 forecasts rely heavily on ensemble modeling techniques, there are enough differences in the data and
1730 modeling approaches that the scientific basis behind their methods does not directly translate to a stock
1731 assessment application. Essentially, weather forecasts can evaluate model skill by direct comparison
1732 with observed events, but in stock assessments, the true occurrence (e.g., last year’s total biomass)
1733 cannot be observed without uncertainty. Nevertheless, there is a growing preference to use multimodel
1734 inference for characterizing process errors in stock assessments, and quantitative approaches are
1735 currently being used for some stocks (Stewart and Martell, 2015).

1736 Within a single assessment model configuration, several diagnostic tools can be used to evaluate the
1737 consistency and stability of a model. Retrospective analyses (such as Mohn, 1999) test for systematic
1738 inconsistencies, or patterns in the results, when the model excludes data year-by-year going back in
1739 time. If models do not perform well according to this diagnostic, then there is an issue with the
1740 assessment and alternative model configurations may be evaluated. Thus, retrospective analysis is
1741 useful for evaluating the extent of model mis-specification (Hanselman et al., 2013), which may help
1742 address process error. However, detecting and accounting for retrospective patterns is not
1743 straightforward and remains an area of active research (Deroba, 2014; Hurtado-Ferro et al., 2015;
1744 Brooks and Legault, 2016; Miller and Legault, 2017). Although other diagnostic tools can evaluate model
1745 stability, retrospective analyses are commonly used because when a model shows a pattern, researchers
1746 tend to be skeptical about the assessment results.

1747

1748 **5.4.2. Decision support**

1749 Decision support analyses use the uncertainty surrounding the outputs of stock assessment models and
1750 other components of the management process to evaluate tradeoffs among options. The need to
1751 quantify uncertainty was reinforced under the National Standard 1 (NS1) Guidelines, which specify the
1752 requirement apply a risk policy that accounts for scientific uncertainty when setting catch limits (Methot
1753 et al., 2014). Assessment scientists from NOAA Fisheries provided important technical guidance for
1754 applying this aspect of the NS1 Guidelines (Shertzer et al., 2009) where they showed how the probability
1755 range (i.e., uncertainty) around an estimated overfishing level (OFL) could be used to set a catch target
1756 below the OFL that had a specified probability, P^* , of allowing overfishing to occur. According to the NS1
1757 Guidelines, the chance of exceeding the true OFL must not exceed 50%, and the approach from Shertzer
1758 et al. allows managers to specify the level of risk they are willing to tolerate (up to a 50% chance of
1759 overfishing). There are other acceptable approaches to account for uncertainty in catch
1760 recommendations, and these are typically more generic than P^* . For example, the Pacific Fishery
1761 Management Council relies on a meta-analysis of the performance of past assessments to develop an
1762 overall level of assessment uncertainty to feed into the P^* approach (Ralston et al., 2011).

1763 Decision tables are another tool increasingly being used in stock assessments to show managers a range
1764 of outcomes if errors occur in certain aspects of the assessment. Decision tables contrast the effects of a
1765 range of possible management decisions (e.g., harvest levels) with a range of stock assessment
1766 scenarios. For example, this approach can show how a higher quota could quickly deplete a stock if the
1767 stock size is actually lower than the current estimate. Conversely, the table could show how a lower
1768 quota may result in missed fishing opportunity if stock biomass is actually higher than estimated.

1769 Another, more comprehensive decision-support tool is termed Management Strategy Evaluation (MSE;
1770 de la Mare, 1986; Smith et al., 1999; Punt et al., 2014). An MSE takes the basic concept of the decision
1771 table and plays it out in computer simulations many times to reveal the performance characteristics of
1772 the entire fishery–science–management system. MSEs contribute to a transparent decision-making
1773 process because they include stakeholders in the earliest stages where objectives are defined. This
1774 approach helps improve management decisions, from data collection, to modeling approaches, to
1775 harvest control rules that have the most needed properties. Essentially, any decision point in the
1776 science–management process can be evaluated using MSE, such as optimizing between fishery-
1777 independent versus fishery-dependent data collection (Cummings et al., 2016). Because of the variety of
1778 uncertainties that can be addressed using the MSE technique, NOAA Fisheries has been expanding its
1779 capacity in this rapidly growing field by supporting projects and hiring staff dedicated to conducting
1780 MSEs.

1781 5.5. Strengths and challenges

1782
1783 NOAA Fisheries is a world leader in the science of stock assessment modeling. With substantial modeling
1784 expertise and sophisticated software, the assessment models used by NOAA Fisheries are accurate and
1785 efficient and can accommodate a variety of stocks with different types and qualities of data. These
1786 models provide the quantitative advice that has supported a successful and sustainable U.S. fisheries
1787 management system. However, despite many decades of assessment model evolution, old challenges
1788 remain unresolved (Maunder and Piner, 2014), and new issues have come to the forefront.

- 1789 • **More stock assessments should be linked to ecosystem or socioeconomic drivers.**

1790 All stock assessment models are simplifications of nature. They operate on less detailed spatial
1791 scales than the scale on which fish interact with fishing operations and their local habitats. The
1792 models tend to assume constant or randomly fluctuating rate processes that are rarely linked to
1793 specific ecosystem or socioeconomic causal factors. The standard assumption is that average,
1794 although variable, processes have been operating for the past decades, and these processes will
1795 continue to fluctuate around that same average in the future. However, as climate change and
1796 other mechanisms cause ecosystems to shift from recent average conditions, it may not be safe
1797 to assume that past conditions reflect the future. In fact, process errors (Section 5.4.1) may
1798 occur in some stock assessments when an assessment does not include important ecosystem
1799 effects.

1800
1801 Thus, the scopes of certain stock assessments need to be expanded to incorporate factors other
1802 than fishing that influence the status and likely future direction of harvested stocks. Many
1803 important processes and dynamics operate within an ecosystem; consequently, there is a
1804 variety of approaches to account for ecosystem dynamics within assessments. For instance,
1805 assessment models are generally flexible enough to incorporate factors related to climate
1806 change, predator–prey dynamics, habitat effects, species distributions and movements, and
1807 others in a variety of ways. The primary challenges to expanding assessments are in
1808 understanding the relationship between ecosystems and fish stocks and obtaining data that
1809 capture these relationships. Through ongoing research efforts and advanced techniques, NOAA
1810 Fisheries has made good progress in expanding the scope of certain assessments. As described
1811 in Box 5.1, NOAA Fisheries incorporates ecosystem factors into assessments where there is a
1812 strong case for doing so and the appropriate data are available.

1813
1814 Another important detail to consider regarding ecosystem and socioeconomic data and their
1815 incorporation in stock assessments is the ability to project those dynamics. Assessment models
1816 are used to develop forecasts of stock and fishery dynamics and predict future catches and stock
1817 status. These forecasts serve as the basis for developing recommendations regarding
1818 sustainable harvest levels. If features of the assessment model are linked to ecosystem or
1819 socioeconomic factors, then projections of those factors are needed. Certain ecosystem

1820 dynamics can be forecasted with much higher skill than others, and the resolution of the
1821 forecasts needs to match that of the assessment forecasts. Thus, in addition to increasing
1822 ecosystem data collection and process studies, there is a need to improve forecast skill for
1823 important ecosystem dynamics on time and space scales that are relevant to fisheries
1824 management. Although Box 5.1 demonstrates progress in this area, there is a definite need for
1825 continued advancement, and increased use of additional data and drivers in stock assessments
1826 will be contingent on three important factors:

- 1827
- 1828 1. Continued research to understand linkages between stock dynamics and
1829 ecosystem/socioeconomic drivers
 - 1830 2. Availability of relevant ecosystem/socioeconomic data (see Chapter 9)
 - 1831
 - 1832 3. Priority and capability for implementing expanded stock assessment models and forecasts (see
1833 Chapter 9 for a discussion of modeling capability and Chapter 10 for a prioritized approach to
1834 determining which assessments should be expanded) .
 - 1835

1836 • **Guidance is needed for appropriately characterizing process errors.**

1837 There is a long history in stock assessments of exploring a variety of model configurations and
1838 model types within assessments although, historically, scientific advice has typically been based
1839 on the results from one “best” model run. However, scientists and managers are becoming less
1840 comfortable with relying on a single model and are increasingly interested in capturing multiple
1841 theories about stock and fishery dynamics to form the basis for quantitative advice. Using a
1842 range of models offers appropriate treatment of the true process error and uncertainty
1843 surrounding the advice, but there are several important considerations in need of research and
1844 guidance:

- 1845
- 1846 1. How should results from multiple stock assessment models be communicated and/or
1847 combined to provide advice to managers?
 - 1848 2. What diagnostics and measures of model skill should be used when evaluating a suite of
1849 assessment models and selecting one or more model as the basis for management
1850 advice?
 - 1851 3. How should the total uncertainty from a group of assessment models be appropriately
1852 characterized and used in the management process?
 - 1853

1854 • **Research is still needed to inform basic stock assessment decisions.**

1855 The current stock assessment process works well in most cases. However, stock assessment
1856 models are complex and diverse, so despite decades of development and application, continued
1857 work is still needed to address the basic features and assumptions of these models. For
1858 instance, there are often requests to use new data sources (or all available data) within
1859 assessments. Yet, not all data are necessarily appropriate for assessments because they may not

1860 adequately represent stock dynamics, they may not be in a format that is compatible with a
1861 particular assessment model, or they are made available too late in the assessment process to
1862 be evaluated sufficiently. Assessment models tend to perform better when there is strong
1863 contrast in the data; that is, the observations cover a range of conditions from high to low stock
1864 abundance and from high to low levels of fishing. Unfortunately, most sampling programs were
1865 not in place throughout the several decades in which fisheries have impacted fish stocks. As a
1866 result, the data are more informative about recent trends but not about the absolute condition
1867 of the stock relative to historical conditions that predate fishing. Where fish abundance data can
1868 be adjusted to provide assessments with measures of absolute abundance, the assessment then
1869 contains a strong anchor point regarding total biomass. The availability of absolute abundance is
1870 a major step forward in knowledge for stock assessments. Unfortunately, fish are difficult to
1871 sample in a fully calibrated way, so most surveys and fishery-dependent indices of abundance
1872 reflect relative changes over time but not absolute measures of fish abundance.

1873
1874 Stock assessment teams, review panels, and management groups (e.g., council SSCs) play an
1875 important role in determining which data sources should be incorporated into specific
1876 assessments. After data are selected and prepared for a particular assessment model there still
1877 may be issues to resolve. For example, more than one data set may capture particular aspects of
1878 the stock, but conflict in the information being passed to the model. This conflict can inflate
1879 uncertainty or create instability with the assessment model and therefore can result in a debate
1880 about how to statistically “weight” various data sources. The following list highlights several
1881 areas where further research and development are needed to provide objective, standardized,
1882 and quantitative approaches to help guide several basic decisions within stock assessments:

- 1883
- 1884 1. Selection and processing of a variety of data sources for use in assessments
 - 1885 2. Weighting of data sources within assessments
 - 1886 3. Dealing with conflicting information and correlated or confounded model components
- 1887

1888 • **Data-limited stock assessment methods do not provide complete information to managers.**
1889 With limited information, researchers cannot obtain the same results or certainty available in
1890 stock assessments that use more complete data. Unfortunately, filling these gaps by collecting
1891 more data is not the only answer, because for many stocks, data collection is technically difficult
1892 or cost prohibitive. Data-limited methods give us tools to prioritize stocks into those for which
1893 full assessments appear unnecessary, and those for which relevant data needs to be collected to
1894 conduct a more complete assessment. Thus, there is a need to manage expectations with data-
1895 limited stock assessments (Cummings et al., 2014) and a need to develop strategies for
1896 addressing fishery management needs and mandates when data are not available to do so.

1897

1898

1899 **Box 5.1. NOAA Fisheries' stock assessments with ecosystem information**

1900 NOAA Fisheries conducts stock assessments to produce scientific advice for fishery managers. The main
1901 objectives of fishery stock assessments are to evaluate stock status relative to defined limits, and to
1902 recommend harvest levels that optimize yield, prevent overfishing, and rebuild depleted stocks as
1903 necessary. In most cases, assessments are conducted from a single-species perspective, where ecosystem
1904 and environmental factors are not drivers of stock
1905 dynamics, but are assumed to either be constant or to
1906 contribute to unexplained variation in stock abundance or
1907 biology. However, for a number of stocks, ecosystem
1908 information has been directly incorporated into
1909 assessment models, thereby providing fishery managers
1910 with stock-specific advice that accounts for changes in
1911 the ecosystem. Some West Coast salmon forecasts are
1912 incorporate numerous ocean and ecosystem indicators.
1913 Assessments of certain North Pacific groundfish stocks
1914 and West Coast small pelagic stocks incorporate water
1915 temperature, because this variable affects the number of
1916 fish encountered by abundance surveys. The assessment
1917 of the butterfish stock in the northeast Atlantic also
1918 accounts for habitat effects on availability to abundance
1919 surveys. In addition, for Atlantic herring, northern
1920 shrimp, and Gulf of Mexico groupers, the numbers of fish
1921 that die due to natural causes (i.e., natural mortality) are
1922 modeled using ecosystem indices. With herring, an
1923 important prey species in the northeast Atlantic, predator
1924 dynamics are incorporated into the stock assessment, and
1925 for groupers, fishermen and scientists have observed events where large numbers of fish die when
1926 substantial red tides occur (i.e., harmful algal blooms). Thus, a red tide index is incorporated in the
1927 grouper stock assessments.



1928 The examples highlighted here refer to assessments that incorporated ecosystem data directly as drivers in
1929 the actual assessment models. However, ecosystem data can also be effectively considered when
1930 preparing assessment input data (or during other steps of the process not summarized here). The number
1931 of assessments that incorporate ecosystem data has continued to increase over time. In 2005, 4% of the
1932 stock assessments conducted by NOAA Fisheries included ecosystem factors, and by 2015 that number
1933 increased to 8%. As research and monitoring of stock and ecosystem dynamics continues to expand, the
1934 number of stock assessments and management measures that consider ecosystem variability and change
1935 will continue to increase.

1936

1937

1938 **References**

- 1939 A'mar, Z. T., A. E. Punt, and M. W. Dorn. 2009. The evaluation of two management strategies for the
1940 Gulf of Alaska walleye pollock fishery under climate change. *ICES J. Mar. Sci.* 66:1614–1632.
1941 <https://doi.org/10.1093/icesjms/fsp044>
- 1942 Berkson, J., and J. T. Thorson. 2015. The determination of data-poor catch limits in the United States: is
1943 there a better way? *ICES J. Mar. Sci.* 72:237–242. <https://doi.org/10.1093/icesjms/fsu085>
- 1944 Brodziak, J., and K. Piner. 2010. Model averaging and probable status of North Pacific striped marlin,
1945 *Tetrapturus audax*. *Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci.* 67:793–805. <https://doi.org/10.1139/F10-029>
- 1946 Brodziak, J., and C. M. Legault. 2005. Model averaging to estimate rebuilding targets for overfished
1947 stocks. *Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci.* 62:544–562. <https://doi.org/10.1139/f04-199>
- 1948 Brooks, E. N., and C. M. Legault. 2016. Retrospective forecasting—evaluating performance of stock
1949 projections for New England groundfish stocks. *Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci.* 73:935–950.
1950 <https://doi.org/10.1139/cjfas-2015-0163>
- 1951 Buckland, S. T., K. P. Burnham, and N. H. Augustin. 1997. Model selection: an integral part of inference.
1952 *Biometrics* 53:603–618. <https://doi.org/10.2307/2533961>
- 1953 Burnham, K. P., and D. R. Anderson. 1998. Model selection and inference: a practical information–
1954 theoretic approach, 353 p. Springer Verlag, New York.
- 1955 Butterworth, D. S. 2007. Why a management procedure approach? Some positives and negatives. *ICES J.*
1956 *Mar. Sci.* 64:613–617. <https://doi.org/10.1093/icesjms/fsm003>
- 1957 Christensen, V., and C. J. Walters. 2004. Ecopath with ecosim: methods, capabilities and limitations.
1958 *Ecol. Model.* 172(2–4):109–139. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ecolmodel.2003.09.003>
- 1959 Cummings, N. J., M. Karnauskas, A. Rios, W. Harford, R. Trumble, R. Glazer, A. Acosta, and W. L. Michaels.
1960 (2016 in review). Report of a GCFI Workshop: best practices and trade-offs between fishery-
1961 dependent versus fishery-independent sampling in data-limited regions. Gulf and Caribbean Fisheries
1962 Institute Conference, Panama City, Panama, November 9–13, 2015. NOAA Tech. Mem. NMFS-SEFSC-
1963 xxx, 33pp.
- 1964 Cummings, N. J., M. Karnauskas, W. L. Michaels, and A. Acosta. 2014. Report of a GCFI workshop:
1965 evaluation of current status and application of data-limited stock assessment methods in the larger
1966 Caribbean region. NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-SEFSC-661, 24 p. <https://doi.org/10.7289/V5DN4304>
- 1967 Curtis, K. L., J. S. Collie, C. M. Legault, and J. S. Link. 2013. Evaluating the performance of a multispecies
1968 statistical catch-at-age model. *Can. J. Aquat. Sci.* 70:470–484. <http://dx.doi.org/10.1139/cjfas-2012-0229>
1969

- 1970 de la Mare, W. K. 1986. Simulation studies on management procedures. Rep. Int. Whaling Comm. 36:
1971 429–450.
- 1972 Deroba, J. J. 2014. Evaluating the consequences of adjusting fish stock assessment estimates of biomass
1973 for retrospective patterns using Mohn's Rho. North Am. J. Fish. Manage. 34:380–390.
1974 <http://dx.doi.org/10.1080/02755947.2014.882452>
1975
- 1976 Field, J. C., R. C. Francis, and K. Aydin. 2006. Top-down modelling and bottom-up dynamics: linking a
1977 fisheries-based ecosystem model with climate hypotheses in the Northern California Current. Prog.
1978 Oceanogr. 68:238–270. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.pocean.2006.02.010>
- 1979 Francis, R. I. C. C. 2011. Data weighting in statistical fisheries stock assessment models. Can. J. Fish.
1980 Aquat. Sci. 68:1124–1138. <https://doi.org/10.1139/f2011-025>
- 1981 Fogarty, M. J., W. J. Overholtz, and J. S. Link. 2012. Aggregate surplus production models for demersal
1982 fishery resources of the Gulf of Maine. Mar. Ecol. Prog. Ser. 459:247–258.
1983 <https://doi.org/10.3354/meps09789>
- 1984 Fulton, E. A., J. S. Link, I. C. Kaplan, M. Savina-Rolland, P. Johnson, C. Ainsworth, P. Horne, R. Gorton, R. J.
1985 Gamble, A. D. M. Smith, and D. C. Smith. 2011. Lessons in modelling and management of marine
1986 ecosystems: the Atlantis experience. Fish Fish. 12:171–188. [https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1467-
1987 2979.2011.00412.x](https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1467-2979.2011.00412.x)
- 1988 Gelman, A., J. B. Carlin, H. S. Stern and D. B. Rubin. 1995. Bayesian data analysis, 526 p. Chapman and
1989 Hall, London.
- 1990 Hanselman, D. H., B. Clark, and M. Sigler. 2013. Report of the groundfish plan team retrospective
1991 investigations group, 12 p. [Available at
1992 http://www.afsc.noaa.gov/REFM/stocks/Plan_Team/2013/Sept/Retrospectives_2013_final3.pdf.]
- 1993 Hanselman, D. H., S. K. Shotwell, P. J. F. Hulson, C. R. Lunsford, and J. Ianelli. 2013. Assessment of the
1994 Pacific ocean perch stock in the Gulf of Alaska. *In* Stock assessment and fishery evaluation report for
1995 the groundfish resources of the Bering Sea, Aleutian Islands and Gulf of Alaska, p. 757–832.
1996 [Available from North Pacific Fishery Management Council, 605 W. 4th Ave., Suite 306, Anchorage,
1997 AK 99501-2252.]
- 1998 Hill, S. L., G. M. Watters, A. E. Punt, M. K. McAllister, C. Le Quéré, and J. Turner. 2007. Model uncertainty
1999 in the ecosystem approach to fisheries. Fish Fish. 8:315–336. [https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1467-
2000 2979.2007.00257.x](https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1467-2979.2007.00257.x)
- 2001 Holsman, K. K., J. Ianelli, K. Aydin, and A. E. Punt. In prep. Comparative biological reference points
2002 estimated from temperature-specific multispecies and single species stock assessment models.
2003 *Deepsea Research II* 00: 00–00.

- 2004 Hulson, P.-J. F., T. J. Quinn II, D. H. Hanselman, and J. N. Ianelli. 2013. Spatial modeling of Bering Sea
2005 walleye pollock with integrated age-structured assessment models in a changing environment. *Can.*
2006 *J. Fish. Aquat. Sci.* 70:1402–1416. <https://doi.org/10.1139/cjfas-2013-0020>
- 2007 Hurtado-Ferro, F., C. S. Szuwalski, J. L. Valero, S. C. Anderson, C. J. Cunningham, K. F. Johnson, R.
2008 Licandeo, C. R. McGilliard, C. C. Monnahan, M. L. Muradian, K. Ono, K. A. Vert-Pre, A. R. Whitten,
2009 and A. E. Punt. 2015. Looking in the rear-view mirror: bias and retrospective patterns in integrated,
2010 age-structured stock assessment models. *ICES J. Mar. Sci.* 72(1):99–110.
2011 <https://doi.org/10.1093/icesjms/fsu198>
2012
- 2013 Ianelli, J. N., A. B. Hollowed, A. C. Haynie, F. J. Mueter, and N. A. Bond. 2011. Evaluating management
2014 strategies for eastern Bering Sea walleye pollock (*Theragra chalcogramma*) in a changing
2015 environment. *ICES J. Mar. Sci.* 68:1297–1304. <https://doi.org/10.1093/icesjms/fsr010>
- 2016 Kinzey, D. and A. E. Punt. 2009. Multispecies and single-species models of fish population dynamics:
2017 comparing parameter estimates. *Nat. Resour. Model.* 22:67–104. [https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1939-](https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1939-7445.2008.00030.x)
2018 [7445.2008.00030.x](https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1939-7445.2008.00030.x)
- 2019 Link, J. S., D. Mason, T. Lederhouse, S. Gaichas, T. Hartley, J. Ianelli, R. Methot, C. Stock, C. Stow, and H.
2020 Townsend. 2015. Report from the Joint OAR-NMFS Modeling Uncertainty Workshop. NOAA Tech.
2021 Memo. NMFS-F/SPO-153, 31 p.
- 2022 Livingston, P. A., and J. Jurado-Molina. 2000. A multispecies virtual population analysis of the eastern
2023 Bering Sea. *ICES J. Mar. Sci.* 57:294–299. <https://doi.org/doi:10.1006/jmsc.1999.0524>
- 2024 Magnusson, A., A. E. Punt, and R. Hilborn. 2013. Measuring uncertainty in fisheries stock assessment:
2025 the delta method, bootstrap, and MCMC. *Fish Fish.* 14:325–342. [https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1467-](https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1467-2979.2012.00473.x)
2026 [2979.2012.00473.x](https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1467-2979.2012.00473.x)
- 2027 Maunder, M. N., and K. R. Piner. Contemporary fisheries stock assessment: many issues still remain. *ICES*
2028 *J. Mar. Sci.* 72:7–18. <https://doi.org/10.1093/icesjms/fsu015>
- 2029 Maunder, M. N., and A. E. Punt. 2004. Standardizing catch and effort data: a review of recent
2030 approaches. *Fish. Res.* 70:141–159. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.fishres.2004.08.002>
- 2031 Maunder and Punt, 2013. A review of integrated analysis in fisheries stock assessment. *Fish. Res.*
2032 142:61–74. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.fishres.2012.07.025>
- 2033 Marasco, R. J., D. Goodman, C. B. Grimes, P. W. Lawson, A. E. Punt, and T. J. Quinn II. 2007. Ecosystem-
2034 based fisheries management: some practical suggestions. *Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci.* 64:928–939.
2035 <https://doi.org/10.1139/f07-062>
- 2036 Martell, S., and R. Froese. 2013. A simple method for estimating MSY from catch and resilience. *Fish*
2037 *Fish.* 14:504–514. <https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1467-2979.2012.00485.x>

- 2038 Martell, S. J. D., and I. J. Stewart. 2014. Towards defining good practices for modeling time-varying
2039 selectivity. *Fish. Res.* 158:84–95. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.fishres.2013.11.001>
- 2040 Maunder, M. N., and A. E. Punt. 2004. Standardizing catch and effort data: a review of recent
2041 approaches. *Fish. Res.* 70:141–159. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.fishres.2004.08.002>
- 2042 Methot, R. D. Jr., and C. R. Wetzel. 2013. Stock synthesis: a biological and statistical framework for fish
2043 stock assessment and fishery management. *Fish. Res.* 142:86–99.
2044 <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.fishres.2012.10.012>
- 2045 Methot, R. D. Jr., G. R. Tromble, D. M. Lambert, and K. E. Greene. 2014. Implementing a science-based
2046 system for preventing overfishing and guiding sustainable fisheries in the United States. *ICES J. Mar.*
2047 *Sci.* 71:183–194. <https://doi.org/10.1093/icesjms/fst119>
- 2048 Miller, T. J., and C. M. Legault. 2017. Statistical behavior of retrospective patterns and their effects on
2049 estimation of stock and harvest status. *Fish. Res.* 186:109–120.
2050 <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.fishres.2016.08.002>
- 2051 Mohn, R. 1999. The retrospective problem in sequential population analysis: an investigation using cod
2052 fishery and simulated data. *ICES J. Mar. Sci.* 56:473–488. <https://doi.org/10.1006/jmsc.1999.0481>
- 2053 Mueter, F. J., and B. A. Megrey. 2006. Using multi-species surplus production models to estimate
2054 ecosystem-level maximum sustainable yields. *Fish. Res.* 81:189–201.
2055 <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.fishres.2006.07.010>
- 2056 Mueter, F. J., N. A. Bond, J. N. Ianelli, and A. B. Hollowed. 2011. Expected declines in recruitment of
2057 walleye pollock (*Theragra chalcogramma*) in the eastern Bering Sea under future climate change. *ICES J.*
2058 *Mar. Sci.* 68:1284–1296. <https://doi.org/10.1093/icesjms/fsr022>
- 2059 Newman, D., T. Carruthers, A. MacCall, C. Porch, and L. Suatoni. Improving the science and management
2060 of data-limited fisheries: an evaluation of current methods and recommended approaches.
2061 Report R-14-09-B, 32 p. Natural Resources Defense Council, NY.
2062 <https://doi.org/10.13140/2.1.3764.4481>
- 2063 Overland, J. E., and M. Wang. 2007. Future climate of the North Pacific Ocean. *EOS Trans. Am. Geophys.*
2064 *Union* 88:182.
- 2065 Patterson, K. R. 1999. Evaluating uncertainty in harvest control law catches using Bayesian Markov chain
2066 Monte Carlo virtual population analysis with adaptive rejection sampling and including structural
2067 uncertainty. *Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci.* 56:208–221. <https://doi.org/10.1139/f98-157>
- 2068 Peterman, R. M. 2004. Possible solutions to some challenges facing fisheries scientists and managers.
2069 *ICES J. Mar. Sci.* 61:1331–1343. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.icesjms.2004.08.017>
- 2070 Plagányi, É. E. 2007. Models for an ecosystem approach to fisheries. Food and Agriculture Organization
2071 of the United Nations, Rome. [Available at <http://www.fao.org/docrep/010/a1149e/a1149e00.htm>.]

- 2072 Plagányi, É. E., A. E. Punt, R. Hillary, E. B. Morello, O. Thébaud, T. Hutton, R. D. Pillans, J. T. Thorson, E. A.
2073 Fulton, A. D. M. Smith, F. Smith, P. Bayliss, M. Haywood, V. Lyne, and P. C. Rothlisberg. In press.
2074 Models of intermediate complexity for ecosystem assessment to support tactical management
2075 decisions in fisheries and conservation. *Fish Fish.* 00: 00-00.
- 2076 Prager, M. H., C. E. Porch, K. W. Shertzer, and J. F. Caddy. 2003. Targets and limits for management of
2077 fisheries: a simple probability-based approach. *North Am. J. Fish. Manage.* 23:349–361.
2078 [https://doi.org/10.1577/1548-8675\(2003\)023<0349:TALFMO>2.0.CO;2](https://doi.org/10.1577/1548-8675(2003)023<0349:TALFMO>2.0.CO;2)
- 2079 Prager, M. H., and K. W. Shertzer. 2010. Deriving acceptable biological catch from the overfishing limit:
2080 implications for assessment models. *North Am. J. Fish. Manage.* 30:289–294.
2081 <http://dx.doi.org/10.1577/M09-105.1>
- 2082 Punt, A. E., and G. P. Donovan. 2007. Developing management procedures that are robust to
2083 uncertainty: lessons from the International Whaling Commission. *ICES J. Mar. Sci.* 64:603–612.
2084 <https://doi.org/10.1093/icesjms/fsm035>
- 2085 Punt, A. E., D. S. Butterworth, C. L. de Moor, J. A. A. De Oliveira, and M. Haddon. 2014. Management
2086 strategy evaluation: best practices. *Fish Fish.* 17:303–334. <https://doi.org/10.1111/faf.12104>
- 2087 Punt, A. E., F. Hurtado-Ferro, and A. R. Whitten. 2014. Model selection for selectivity in fisheries stock
2088 assessments. *Fish. Res.* 158:124–134. <https://doi.org/10.1577/M09-105.1>
- 2089 Ralston, S., A. E. Punt, O. S. Hamel, J. D. DeVore, and R. J. Conser. 2011. A meta-analytic approach to
2090 quantifying scientific uncertainty in stock assessments. *Fish. Bull.* 109:217–231.
- 2091 Stewart, I. J., A. C. Hicks, I. G. Taylor, J. T. Thorson, C. Wetzel, and S. Kupschus. 2013. A
2092 comparison of stock assessment uncertainty estimates using maximum likelihood and Bayesian
2093 methods implemented with the same model framework. *Fish. Res.* 142:37–46.
2094 <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.fishres.2012.07.003>
- 2095 Shertzer, C. E., M. H. Prager, and E. H. Williams. 2008. A probability-based approach to setting annual
2096 catch levels. *Fish. Bull.* 106:225–232.
- 2097 Smith, A. D. M., K. J. Sainsbury, and R. A. Stevens. 1999. Implementing effective fisheries-management
2098 systems—management strategy evaluation and the Australian partnership approach. *ICES J. Mar. Sci.*
2099 56:967–979. <https://doi.org/10.1006/jmsc.1999.0540>
- 2100 Stewart, I. J., and S. J. D. Martell. 2015. Reconciling stock assessment paradigms to better inform
2101 fisheries management. *ICES J. Mar. Sci.* 72(8):2187–2196. <https://doi.org/10.1093/icesjms/fsv061>
- 2102 Thorson, J. T., Shelton, A. O., Ward, E. J., Skaug, H. J., 2015a. Geostatistical delta-generalized linear
2103 mixed models improve precision for estimated abundance indices for West Coast groundfishes. *ICES*
2104 *J. Mar. Sci. J. Cons.* 72:1297–1310. <https://doi.org/10.1093/icesjms/fsu243>
- 2105 Wang, M., J. E. Overland, and N. A. Bond. 2010. Climate projections for selected large marine
2106 ecosystems. *J. Mar. Syst.* 79:258–266. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jmarsys.2008.11.028>

- 2107 Ward, E. J. 2008. A review and comparison of four commonly used Bayesian and maximum likelihood
2108 model selection tools. *Ecol. Model.* 211:1–10. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ecolmodel.2007.10.030>
- 2109 Wilberg, M. J., and J. R. Bence. 2008. Performance of deviance information criterion model selection in
2110 statistical catch-at-age analysis. *Fish. Res.* 93:212–221.
2111 <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.fishres.2008.04.010>
- 2112 Zheng, J., M. C. Murphy, and G. H. Kruse. 1995. A length-based population model and stock–recruitment
2113 relationships for red king crab, *Paralithodes camtschaticus*, in Bristol Bay, Alaska. *Can. J. Fish. Aquat.*
2114 *Sci.* 52:1229–1246. <https://doi.org/10.1139/f95-120>
- 2115
- 2116

2117 Chapter 6. Quality Assurance in the Stock Assessment Process

2118

2119 Chapter highlights

- 2120 • **Objective peer reviews of stock assessments are necessary to help determine that the best**
- 2121 **scientific information available is used as the basis for fisheries management.**
- 2122 • **Independent regional peer review processes improve the integrity, reliability, and credibility**
- 2123 **of scientific information used for fishery management.**
- 2124 • **Stock assessment reviews vary in their extent in accordance with the “terms of reference”**
- 2125 **that guide a particular assessment peer review.**
- 2126 • **The review process provides transparency and opportunities for stakeholder input.**
- 2127 • **There is a trade-off between maintaining high standards for peer reviews and increasing the**
- 2128 **number of completed assessments.**

2129

2130 6.1.0. National guidance on science quality assurance

2131

2132 National Standard 2 (NS2) of the 2007 MSA specifies that conservation and management measures for
2133 federally managed fisheries should be based upon the best scientific information available (BSIA). The
2134 NS2 Guidelines were developed to ensure that the BSIA is used when providing advice to fishery
2135 management councils (NOAA, 2013; NOAA, 2016). This guidance includes the following criteria for
2136 evaluating BSIA: relevance, inclusiveness, objectivity, transparency and openness, timeliness,
2137 verification and validation, and peer review as appropriate. Scientific peer review is described as an
2138 important criterion in determining the BSIA, and for situations where rigorous, independent peer review
2139 is necessary, the NS2 Guidelines adopt many of the Office of Management and Budget (OMB) peer
2140 review standards (OMB 2004). These standards include balance in expertise, knowledge, and bias; lack
2141 of conflicts of interest; independence from the work being reviewed; and transparency of the peer
2142 review process. The NS2 Guidelines recognize that varying degrees of independence may be required for
2143 various reviews depending on the novelty, controversy, and complexity of the review. For example, an
2144 assessment update may be sufficiently reviewed with only regional expertise, while a review of
2145 emerging methods or controversial topics may require a more rigorous, independent peer review
2146 process. Deciding on an appropriate scope for the review is linked with how best to balance the need for
2147 a high quantity of assessments for timely management decisions with the need for rigorous peer
2148 reviews when necessary.

2149

2150 The NS2 Guidelines indicate that regional science centers and their respective councils have the
2151 discretion to determine the appropriate form of peer review needed for each stock assessment. The
2152 guidelines also clarify the role of the Fishery Management Councils' Science and Statistical Committees
2153 (SSCs) in the scientific review process. A peer review process is not a substitute for an SSC, but should

2154 work in conjunction with the SSC. The NS2 Guidelines also clarified the contents of the Stock Assessment
2155 and Fishery Evaluation (SAFE) report, which can consist of a set of documents that a council uses to
2156 make decisions. The overall objectives of the NS2 Guidelines are to ensure the highest level of integrity
2157 and strengthen public confidence in the quality, validity, and reliability of scientific information
2158 distributed by NOAA Fisheries to support fishery management actions.
2159

2160 **6.2.0. Overview of the stock assessment review process for fisheries** 2161 **management**

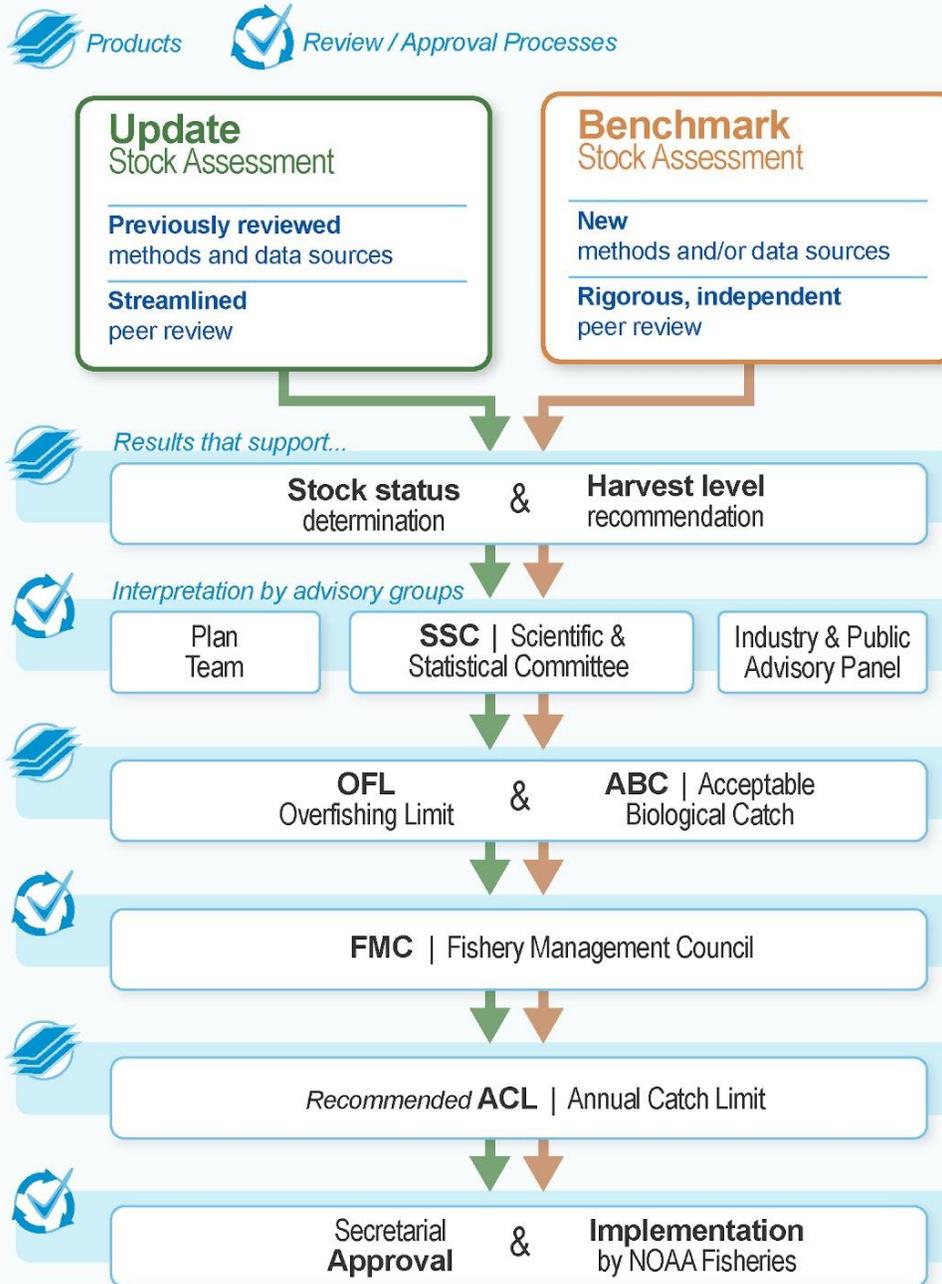
2162
2163 Well-established peer review processes are in place in each region (NOAA, 2016). Each peer review can
2164 vary based on the different stages of the review (e.g., review of the data collection, modeling methods,
2165 and assessment results); the form of the review; or the degree of thoroughness needed. Throughout
2166 these stages, reviews may be conducted internally by regional experts or they may be conducted by
2167 independent reviewers as coordinated by the Center for Independent Experts (CIE). Most often, review
2168 panels consist of a range of expertise including experts with regional knowledge and independent
2169 experts selected through the CIE process. NOAA Fisheries' Office of Science and Technology administers
2170 a contract for the CIE process but the deliverables of the CIE are handled independently. The CIE process
2171 autonomously selects highly qualified peer reviewers, and this rigorous CIE peer review process is most
2172 often used to evaluate benchmark assessments, emerging methods and science, or other potentially
2173 controversial topics (e.g., biological opinions or recovery plans). Typically, CIE reviews are conducted in
2174 person, but "desktop" reviews are also conducted when time and expenses need to be minimized, and
2175 the limitations of a remotely conducted review are acceptable.
2176

2177 The decision to establish a peer review, according to MSA section 302(g)(1)(E), is made jointly by the
2178 Secretary of NOAA Fisheries and a regional council (NOAA, 2016; NOAA 2013). Therefore, the scope of
2179 the review as defined by the review terms of reference (ToR) is established jointly among the pertinent
2180 NOAA Fisheries science center and relevant council(s). Accordingly, councils and science centers are
2181 given discretion to determine the form of peer review used for each stock assessment. For example, a
2182 science center and the relevant council(s) may determine the form of review needed (e.g., panel or desk
2183 review), establish the ToR for the review, and request the combination of expertise required, and
2184 whether independent CIE reviewers will participate on the review panel. Each regional peer review
2185 process incorporates this partnership among the science center and its respective council(s), and each
2186 process complies with the NS2 Guidelines (NOAA, 2016).
2187

2188 The overall review process and the NS2 guidelines provide sufficient flexibility for the science centers
2189 and their respective councils to determine when a peer review is needed, the form of review, and the
2190 degree of rigor needed in the peer review. However, these decisions must also consider the need to
2191 maintain a relatively high rate of completion of stock assessments to support timely management
2192 decisions. To meet this need, rigorous peer reviews should be reserved for products such as benchmark

2193 assessments, emerging methods, or potentially controversial topics (e.g., biological opinions and
2194 recovery plans). For these products, review panels are often balanced with both regional and
2195 independent perspectives in the review process, and stock assessments are often subject to a series of
2196 reviews involving NOAA Fisheries, SSCs, and external CIE review before the scientific information (e.g.,
2197 SAFE report and peer review reports) is sent to the council's SSC advisory panel for its evaluation and
2198 recommendations. Other reviews, such as routine update assessments, do not require a high degree of
2199 independence, allowing for a more streamlined review process by regional experts and the council's
2200 SSC. NS2 Guidelines provide clarification that participation by the SSC in the peer review process is
2201 acceptable as long as their participation is compliant with the peer review standards and does not
2202 interfere with their primary role of providing an evaluation and recommendations to their council.
2203

NOAA Fisheries Generic Stock Assessment to Management Process



2204
 2205 **Figure 6.1.** Generic overview of the process from a draft stock assessment to management decisions,
 2206 including independent review, advisory bodies, council decisions, and final approval by NOAA Fisheries.
 2207 While fishery management councils are responsible for recommending annual catch limits, NOAA
 2208 Fisheries determines stock status for federally managed stocks and this action occurs in parallel to the

2209 process depicted in this figure. (Note: This figure does not provide a detailed representation of each
2210 regional process.)

2211

2212 Overall, NOAA Fisheries' stock assessments are subject to appropriate levels of peer review before they
2213 are used as a basis for fishery management decisions. Figure 6.1 provides a generic representation of
2214 the process by which a stock assessment supports fishery management and is used to develop and
2215 implement catch limits. The details of the actual regional peer review processes vary across regions and
2216 do not strictly adhere to Figure 6.1. For federally managed (and certain interstate commission-managed
2217 stocks), the regional review processes are managed under regional entities, such as Southeast Data
2218 Assessment and Review (SEDAR), the Stock Assessment Workshop/Stock Assessment Review Committee
2219 (SAW/SARC), Stock Assessment Review (STAR), the Western Pacific Stock Assessment Review (WPSAR),
2220 and the North Pacific Plan Team stock assessment review process. Fishery Management Councils, in
2221 partnership with the science centers, use these regional processes in combination with their internal
2222 reviews and the independent CIE reviews. In all cases, review meetings are announced publicly and open
2223 to the public.

2224

2225 **6.3. Regional stock assessment review processes**

2226

2227 Each current regional review process is described briefly in the following sections and compared in Table
2228 6.1. Although these processes encompass many federally managed stocks, NOAA Fisheries participates
2229 in a variety of other stock assessment review processes, particularly for stocks managed under
2230 transboundary and international agreements (i.e., authorities other than the MSA). Because these
2231 processes are quite diverse, and typically established through international partnerships, this section
2232 focuses on the review processes specific to federally managed stocks.

2233

2234 **6.3.1. Southeast Data, Assessment, and Review (SEDAR)**

2235

2236 The SEDAR process was jointly established in 2002 by the NOAA Fisheries' Southeast Fisheries Center
2237 (SEFSC) and Southeast Regional Office (SERO), Southeast Atlantic Fishery Management Council (SAFMC),
2238 Gulf of Mexico Fishery Management Council (GMFMC), and Caribbean Fishery Management Council
2239 (CFMC). The SEDAR process has improved the quality and transparency of fishery stock assessments in
2240 the Atlantic, Gulf of Mexico, and U.S. Caribbean regions. The SEDAR process also works in partnership
2241 with the Atlantic and Gulf States Marine Fisheries Commissions. The SEDAR Steering Committee, which
2242 consists of members from the SEFSC, councils, and Atlantic and Gulf States Marine Fisheries
2243 Commissions, determines the stocks that will be assessed and reviewed in a given year. Many stocks are
2244 assessed on a 3- to 5-year cycle, although higher priority stocks may be assessed more frequently. The
2245 SEDAR Steering Committee also determines the scope for each stock assessment (such as standard,
2246 benchmark, and update assessment). Stock assessment ToR are developed and reviewed by SSCs and
2247 SEFSC analytical staff prior to finalization, ensuring the ToR are appropriate for the species assessed.

2248

2249 The SEDAR process is organized around a series of workshops. In data workshops, datasets are
2250 documented, analyzed, and reviewed, and data for conducting assessment analyses are compiled. In
2251 assessment workshops, quantitative population analyses are developed and refined and stock
2252 assessment parameters are estimated. Finally, in review workshops, a panel of independent experts
2253 reviews the data and assessment analyses and recommends the most appropriate values of critical
2254 population and management quantities. The review workshops typically include a panel composed of
2255 CIE reviewers as well as council SSC appointees. The process takes approximately 6 to 9 months for a
2256 benchmark assessment and 3 to 5 months for an update. Current staffing levels at the SEFSC allow a
2257 total of five to seven SEDAR benchmark assessments per year in across the Gulf of Mexico, Atlantic, and
2258 U.S. Caribbean regions. Additional assessments are then possible if they are conducted as updates. All
2259 SEDAR workshops are open to the public, and SEDAR emphasizes constituent and stakeholder
2260 participation in assessment development, transparency in the assessment process, and a rigorous and
2261 independent scientific review of completed stock assessments. The relatively elaborate review process
2262 implemented by SEDAR, a high level of transparency at each step, and a typical need for compiling data
2263 from a wide variety of sources in the Southeast region creates several bottlenecks that limit the number
2264 of assessments produced in the Southeast.

2265

2266 **6.3.2. Stock Assessment Workshop/Stock Assessment Review Committee (SAW/SARC)**

2267

2268 Beginning in 1985, the SAW/SARC process was jointly established by the NOAA Fisheries' Northeast
2269 Fisheries Science Center (NEFSC), Greater Atlantic Regional Fisheries Office (GARFO), New England
2270 Fishery Management Council (NEFMC), Mid-Atlantic Fishery Management Council (MAFMC), and
2271 Atlantic States Marine Fisheries Commission (ASMFC). The SAW is a formal protocol designed to prepare
2272 and review assessments of fish and invertebrate stocks in the offshore U.S. waters of the northwest
2273 Atlantic, and facilitates federally led stock assessments for the New England and Mid-Atlantic Fishery
2274 Management Councils as well as state-led assessments for the Atlantic States Maine Fisheries
2275 Commission. Within the SAW, assessments are peer reviewed by an independent panel of stock
2276 assessment experts called the Stock Assessment Review Committee (SARC). The SAW/SARC process is
2277 overseen by the Northeast Regional Coordinating Council (NRCC), which includes directors and chairs of
2278 leading partner organizations. These committee members are responsible for developing a 2-year
2279 schedule for stock assessments and helping to develop and approve the stock assessment ToR with the
2280 councils and their SSCs. The SAW/SARC was primarily established for benchmark stock assessments, but
2281 other efforts such as update assessments, operational assessments, and data-limited evaluations are
2282 also facilitated.

2283

2284 The SAW/SARC process includes a series of meetings that are fully open to the public. There are industry
2285 meetings, data meetings, model meetings, and finally peer review meetings where the SARC is asked to
2286 determine the adequacy of the assessments in providing a scientific basis for management. The SARC
2287 panel may accept or reject an assessment, and each SARC panelist provides a written review
2288 approximately 5 weeks after the peer review meeting. The panel also provides an overall written

2289 summary of the proceedings. There are approximately two SARC meetings per year and within each,
2290 two or three stock assessments are typically reviewed. Additional assessments are conducted on stocks
2291 in the northwest Atlantic, but these are reviewed through other processes, such as internally through
2292 the council's SSC. Similar to SEDAR, the SAW/SARC process for benchmark assessments is relatively
2293 time-intensive and therefore limits the number of assessments produced. However, to improve the
2294 number of assessments conducted, the northeast region also produces update or "operational"
2295 assessments that rely on the council's SSC to offer a more streamlined review.

2296

2297 **6.3.3. Stock Assessment Review (STAR)**

2298

2299 The STAR process was established in 1998 to provide peer review of the scientific information (primarily
2300 stock assessments) used for management of Pacific groundfish and coastal midwater species. Thus, the
2301 STAR process is coordinated by the Pacific Fishery Management Council (PFMC), NOAA Fisheries'
2302 Northwest Fisheries Science Center (NWFSC), Southwest Fisheries Science Center (SWFSC), and West
2303 Coast Region (WCR). The PFMC oversees the process and involves its standing advisory bodies,
2304 particularly their SSC. Together, NOAA Fisheries and the PFMC consult with all interested parties to plan
2305 and prepare the ToR and develop a calendar of events with a list of deliverables for final approval by the
2306 council. NOAA Fisheries and the council share fiscal and logistical responsibilities and both strive to
2307 ensure that there are no conflicts of interest in the STAR process.

2308

2309 STAR panels include a chair appointed from the relevant SSC subcommittee (i.e., groundfish or coastal
2310 pelagic species) and three other experienced stock assessment analysts with knowledge of the specific
2311 modeling approaches being reviewed. Of these three members, at least one is typically appointed from
2312 the CIE and at least one should be familiar with west coast stock assessment practices. For groundfish,
2313 an attempt is made to identify one reviewer who can consistently attend all STAR panel meetings in an
2314 assessment cycle. Given these constraints, the pool of qualified technical reviewers is limited, and it can
2315 be difficult to meet all conditions when staffing STAR panels. Groundfish STAR panel meetings occur
2316 every 2 years, whereas reviews of Pacific sardine occur every 3 years and reviews of Pacific mackerel
2317 every 4. The resulting "off years" allow time for conducting research and improving stock assessments.
2318 Typically, three to five STAR panel meetings for groundfish are held during each assessment cycle ("on
2319 year") and one meeting for a coastal pelagic species (either Pacific sardine or Pacific Mackerel). The
2320 panels normally meet for 1 week, and the number of assessments reviewed per panel typically does not
2321 exceed two, except in extraordinary circumstances when the SSC and NOAA Fisheries agree that it is
2322 advisable, feasible, and necessary. For groundfish species, the SSC reviews the STAR panel report and
2323 recommends whether an assessment should be further reviewed at the so-called "mop-up" panel
2324 meeting, a meeting of the SSC's groundfish subcommittee that occurs after all of the STAR panels,
2325 primarily to review rebuilding analyses for overfished stocks. If an assessment is found unacceptable for
2326 use in managing coastal pelagic species, a full assessment would be conducted the following year. The
2327 entire STAR process is fully transparent, and all documents and meetings are open to the public with
2328 opportunity for public comment.

2329

2330 **6.3.4. Western Pacific Stock Assessment Review (WPSAR)**

2331

2332 The WPSAR process was established in 2010 to improve the quality and reliability of stock assessments
2333 for fishery resources in the Pacific Islands region. This region encompasses a range of fisheries and
2334 ecosystems, including the American Samoa Archipelago, Hawaii Archipelago, Mariana Archipelago,
2335 Pacific Remote Island Areas, and Pacific pelagic stocks. The Western Pacific Regional Fishery
2336 Management Council (WPRFMC), Pacific Islands Fisheries Science Center (PIFSC), and Pacific Islands
2337 Regional Office (PIRO) share responsibilities in implementing the WPSAR process. The WPRFMC, PIFSC,
2338 and PIRO provide a coordinator to work together to oversee and facilitate the review process, with
2339 direction from the WPSAR Steering Committee that consists of the directors (or their designees) of the
2340 science center, regional office, and council. The three coordinators work under the direction of the
2341 Steering Committee to plan and organize reviews, prepare ToR, and develop a schedule according to a
2342 multi-year planning cycle. Fiscal and logistical responsibilities are shared among the science center,
2343 regional office, and the council.

2344

2345 The WPSAR framework has been modified over time and currently uses two different approaches for
2346 the review and acceptance of stock assessment research products in the Pacific Islands region. For
2347 benchmark reviews, new stock assessment methods not previously used for management consideration
2348 and any major changes to a previous assessment (beyond inclusion of additional years of data) will
2349 undergo a panel review, most likely in person. This panel will have a chair who will also be a member of
2350 the council's SSC, and all other panel members will be external independent experts who will provide a
2351 review. For update reviews, where assessments have changed only by the addition of recent years of
2352 data, one to three experts will provide a review, most likely by desktop. These experts may consist of all
2353 PIFSC or SSC personnel. For any review, the WPSAR Steering Committee can decide to use CIE as the
2354 review mechanism. Any in-person reviews are open to the public to encourage constituent/stakeholder
2355 participation and ensure rigorous, transparent, and independent scientific review of completed
2356 assessments.

2357

2358 **6.3.5. North Pacific Plan Team Stock Assessment Review Process**

2359

2360 A variety of stocks fall under the jurisdiction of the North Pacific Fishery Management Council (NPFMC),
2361 including groundfish and invertebrates in the Gulf of Alaska (GOA), Bering Sea (BS), and the Aleutian
2362 Islands (AI). NOAA Fisheries' Alaska Fisheries Science Center (AFSC) is responsible for stock assessments
2363 for 22 species or species groups under the groundfish fishery management plan (FMP) for the Gulf of
2364 Alaska (GOA) and approximately 26 species or species groups under the Bering Sea/Aleutian Islands
2365 BS/AI Groundfish FMP. The Alaska Department of Fish and Game (ADF&G) is responsible for one stock
2366 assessment in the GOA groundfish FMP. The AFSC and ADF&G share assessment responsibilities for the
2367 10 species in the BS/AI King and Tanner Crab FMP, and the ADF&G has responsibility for assessing
2368 scallops. The NPFMC, AFSC, Alaska Regional Office (AKRO), and the ADF&G collaborate on the

2369 preparation and conduct of the review of North Pacific stock assessments. The stock assessments and
2370 reviews are guided by generic ToR¹⁹ rather than ToR specific to particular stocks. The review process in
2371 this region includes partnerships with federal and state agencies and academic institutions who
2372 participate in the stock assessment review and advisory process, such as the Council's Plan Teams, SSC,
2373 and Advisory Panel. Separate teams are appointed for the BSAI and GOA, comprising 12 members each.
2374 The teams meet twice a year (3 ½ days in September and 5 days in November). They meet jointly for 1½
2375 days on issues of common interest, including information related to ecosystems, economics,
2376 management, research priorities, and so on. The teams meet separately to review survey data reports
2377 and stock assessments. Their recommendations on the stock assessments, overfishing limits (OFLs), and
2378 acceptable biological catch (ABC) levels are reviewed by the Council's SSC.

2379
2380 The review process has evolved over the past 2 ½ decades to become more streamlined than most
2381 regional processes. Essentially, all stocks managed by the NPFMC are evaluated and reviewed according
2382 to the frequency of the scientific survey upon which the assessment is based. The groundfish trawl
2383 survey in the Eastern Bering Sea (EBS) is conducted annually; therefore, most EBS stocks are assessed
2384 each year. Groundfish trawl surveys in the Gulf of Alaska (GOA) and Aleutian Islands (AI) alternate years
2385 (surveys in the GOA conducted during odd numbered years, and surveys in the AI during even numbered
2386 years). Despite this general schedule, certain stocks (e.g., walleye pollock, Pacific cod, and Atka
2387 mackerel) are assessed annually to prevent these groundfish fisheries from causing jeopardy of
2388 extinction of Stellar sea lions or adverse modification of their critical habitat. A combined GOA/EBS/AI
2389 assessment of sablefish occurs each year, timed with the annual frequency of the sablefish longline
2390 survey in the GOA, and alternating surveys for EBS and AI in odd and even years, respectively..

2391
2392 Typically, update assessments (termed "full assessments") are conducted for developing harvest advice
2393 for the following 2 years. The 2-year cycle allows for the use of the most recent biological information in
2394 the stock assessment while eliminating potential delays or gaps in setting the second year's limits. In the
2395 off years, partial update assessments ("executive summaries") are performed to reevaluate the scientific
2396 advice without conducting a full assessment. The stock assessment updates are compiled in a Stock
2397 Assessment and Fishery Evaluation (SAFE) report. After review and revision, the draft SAFE reports are
2398 released by the science center for pre-dissemination to the council's Plan Teams for review. Plan Teams
2399 review the SAFE reports and make recommendations to the SSC. The SSC then reviews the SAFE reports
2400 as well as the Plan Team recommendations and provides the NPFMC with an ABC and OFL
2401 recommendation for each stock. The council provides public notice of the meetings of its Plan Teams
2402 and SSC and when SAFE reviews are being conducted; procedures are in place to allow for public
2403 comment at these meetings. Although routine updates are necessary for a streamlined annual
2404 assessment and review cycle, recommendations for improving assessments are made and reviewed by
2405 the SSC during the year to allow for improvements without requiring a more comprehensive review
2406 process. However, in addition to the normal schedule of assessment updates and reviews, a separate

¹⁹ http://www.npfmc.org/wp-content/PDFdocuments/membership/PlanTeam/Groundfish/GPT_TOR.pdf

2407 review schedule is maintained, with the goal of obtaining an independent CIE review of each stock
 2408 assessment about once every 5 years. These more involved reviews are scheduled so that they do not
 2409 affect the relatively efficient annual cycle.

2410
 2411 Table 6.1. Comparison of regional stock assessment and peer review processes used in the management
 2412 of U.S. fisheries.

	Peer review process				
	SEDAR	SAW/SARC	STAR	WPSAR	North Pacific Plan Teams
Year initiated	2002	1985	1998	2010	1989
Region(s) covered	Southeast coast, Gulf of Mexico, Caribbean	Northeast coast	West coast	Pacific Islands	Gulf of Alaska, Bering Sea, Aleutian Islands
Council(s) supported	SAFMC, GMFMC, CFMC	NEFMC, MAFMC	PFMC	WPFMC	NPFMC
Other entities supported	ASMFC, GSMFC, HMS Sharks	ASMFC	-	-	-
Science center(s) participating	SEFSC	NEFSC	NWFSC, SWFSC	PIFSC	AFSC
Typical review panel	CIE and SSC	CIE and SSC	SSC, CIE, and other	SSC, PIFSC, CIE, and other	SSC, CIE (roughly every 5 years per stock)

2413
 2414 **6.4. Quality assurance of stock assessments for partner organizations**

2415
 2416 The United States has interests in numerous fisheries, not just the federally managed stocks that fall
 2417 under the MSA. As a result, NOAA Fisheries contributes to assessments of many stocks managed by
 2418 partner organizations, such as interstate commissions, state agencies, tribal organizations, international
 2419 regional fishery management organizations (RFMOs), and organizations related to a variety of
 2420 international treaties and agreements (Figure 3.1). The processes by which these assessments are
 2421 reviewed are under the discretion of each partner organization. NOAA Fisheries works with these groups
 2422 to comply with their respective review processes, but the processes are not bound to MSA mandates. In
 2423 some cases, CIE reviewers are used, and NOAA Fisheries helps to facilitate these reviews. Also, certain

2424 partner organizations rely on the regional processes described in Sections 6.3.1 to 6.3.5. For example,
2425 the Atlantic States Marine Fisheries Commission uses the SEDAR and SAW/SARC processes for many of
2426 its stock assessments.

2427

2428 **6.5. Strengths and challenges**

2429

2430 NOAA Fisheries, the Fishery Management Councils, and many other partners and stakeholders ensure
2431 that high-quality scientific advice (i.e., BSIA) is provided to fishery managers by strictly adhering to MSA
2432 mandates and related guidance. The NS2 Guidelines of the MSA, which emphasize the importance of
2433 peer review, have helped to build confidence and trust among managers and stakeholders that the BSIA
2434 is used in the fishery management process. However, the peer review process presents strengths and
2435 challenges that must be considered to meet the increasing demand to provide timely assessments for
2436 management decisions. For this reason, more careful prioritization is needed when balancing reviews
2437 that require a more rigorous a peer review process (e.g., CIE peer review) and reviews that can be
2438 conducted in a more streamlined manner. Further, NOAA Fisheries facilitates and helps to improve stock
2439 assessment peer reviews through partnerships with numerous management agencies that are not
2440 governed by the MSA. Collectively, a substantial amount of attention is being dedicated toward quality
2441 assurance for stock assessments. These efforts have improved the credibility of the fishery management
2442 process and increased the quality and transparency of fishery management decisions. For federally
2443 managed fisheries, these improvements have contributed to nearly eliminating overfishing, rebuilding
2444 many important stocks, and ensuring the long-term sustainability of marine resources and resiliency of
2445 fishing communities. However, many challenges and tradeoffs associated with the current assessment
2446 review process remain that warrant consideration. The following list briefly describes these issues.

2447

- 2448 • **Comprehensive peer reviews create a bottleneck that affects the rate at which assessments
2449 can be completed.**

2450 Conducting an exhaustive independent peer review of a stock assessment requires substantial
2451 time, effort, and resources and should be used when appropriate. Thus, there is a tradeoff
2452 between the level of rigor dedicated to reviews and the number of assessments that can be
2453 conducted. The regional processes vary in how they prioritize assessment quantity versus review
2454 thoroughness. For example, the NPFMC conducts internal reviews of many assessment updates
2455 each year using council committees, whereas SEDAR coordinates fewer reviews that use a
2456 comprehensive process, particularly for “benchmark” assessments, that relies on the CIE. The
2457 actual review workshop organized by SEDAR lasts only 1 week, and that alone is not a
2458 bottleneck in the assessment completion rate. However, the assessment process coordinated by
2459 SEDAR for benchmark assessments involves multiple workshops (data, assessment, and review)
2460 with public participation and review at each. This multi-step process does limit the number of
2461 assessments completed in this region.

2462

2463 Whether the reviews are comprehensive and independent, internal and smaller scale, or some

2464 combination of each, all current approaches comply with MSA mandates. Therefore, it is up to
2465 the various regional partners to determine what is most needed for successful fishery
2466 management in their region. Generally, comprehensive CIE reviews are not necessary when a
2467 stock assessment is not substantially different from an assessment that was previously deemed
2468 sufficient for management purposes (for a particular stock). A desktop CIE review is available
2469 when there is a need for fully independent peer review and a desire to minimize time and
2470 expenses dedicated to the review. However, desktop reviews can be challenging for reviewers
2471 to fully understand the scope and context of the review. Further, due to strict conflict of interest
2472 regulations and limited availability of independent CIE experts, considerable lead time is
2473 required for contracting and arranging travel for CIE reviewers (approximately 80% tend to be
2474 foreign nationals). Therefore, more rigorous reviews that require a high degree of independence
2475 (i.e., panel review with CIE reviewers) should be used sparingly. For example, these reviews
2476 could be reserved for benchmark assessments that are substantially different from a stock's
2477 previous assessment, assessments that include new or emerging methods, or for scientific
2478 information on potentially controversial issues.

2479

- 2480 • **Fully independent reviews may not always provide the best evaluation of the science.**
2481 NS2 provides guidance on balancing the perspectives of peer reviewers and the varying degree
2482 of independence needed for a review. Although the CIE tends to provide the highest degree of
2483 independence, there are drawbacks to using a CIE panel in addition to increased cost and time.
2484 Reviewers with a higher degree of independence (e.g., CIE reviewers) most often have little to
2485 no prior experience with the regional ecosystem or stock being assessed, and in certain
2486 instances, this might result in erroneous interpretation of the information under review due to
2487 the lack of familiarity with regional issues. Balancing a panel of reviewers with regional expertise
2488 may have benefits in this regard. Given variation in familiarity and the limited pool of CIE
2489 panelists, there also can be a lack of consistency across reviews. This inconsistency may cause
2490 some researchers to feel that the nature of the criticisms and potentially the rejection or
2491 acceptance of a particular assessment is driven more by the composition of the review panel
2492 than the quality of the science. This perception can create instability in the management
2493 process. The STAR process addresses this inconsistency by using a primary reviewer who
2494 participates in all its panel reviews during each review cycle (as well as reviewers with regional
2495 expertise such as SSC members).

2496

- 2497 • **There is a need for consistent documentation and transparent results in the peer review
2498 process.**
2499 Although the stock assessment peer review process offers a high degree of transparency and
2500 provides ample opportunity for stakeholder engagement, further improvements in the
2501 consistency and transparency can be made regarding the information used in the peer review
2502 process (e.g., SAFE reports) and the peer review results. All meetings are open to the public, and
2503 relevant documents, including assessment and reviewer reports, are generally provided and

2504 made available on publicly accessible websites. The CIE peer review reports are also made
2505 publicly available. However, there are instances where it is unclear in the final stock assessment
2506 report just how the peer review influenced the final product and improved the overall
2507 management advice. Because there is not a standard format across regions for reporting the
2508 conclusions of the review panel—and what, if any, adjustments or additional analyses were
2509 performed to address reviewer comments—this information can be difficult to locate or
2510 inconsistently reported. When stakeholders cannot find this information, they may perceive the
2511 process as less transparent than intended.

2512

2513 • **Well-defined ToR are critical for successful stock assessment reviews.**

2514 Establishing well-defined ToR can provide an appropriate scope for the review, define
2515 appropriate levels of expertise and independence for reviewers, ensure that reviewers focus on
2516 the key elements of the assessment, and describe how to document and respond to reviewer
2517 comments. Thus, the ToR for each regional peer review process and CIE review are established
2518 before the peer review is conducted (NOAA, 2016). To maintain successful peer review
2519 processes, improvements may be needed to ensure that future reviews are conducted
2520 appropriately and are most beneficial to the fishery management process. For this reason, it is
2521 beneficial for the science centers and their respective councils to jointly establish the ToR. In
2522 certain instances, reviewers have focused on aspects of the assessment that are less critical to
2523 ensuring high-quality advice. For example, reviewers may be tempted to focus on reviewing
2524 previously established methods, or previously reviewed data sets, rather than the way in which
2525 assessment methods were applied given the available data. Also, in some cases the number of
2526 additional analyses that can be requested by reviewers is unlimited. Issues such as these can
2527 result in a burdensome review process that may not improve the resulting scientific advice. The
2528 success of the review also depends on the chair who serves in the impartial facilitation of a
2529 panel review based on the ToR.

2530

2531 • **Externally provided stock assessments must be subject to the regional peer review process.**

2532 On occasion, entities other than NOAA Fisheries conduct assessments of federally managed
2533 stocks. These assessments may be well integrated into the management process or outside
2534 normal procedures. Typically, external assessments are commissioned by a stakeholder either to
2535 fill a data gap that is not being addressed or to provide an alternative perspective in an ongoing
2536 assessment. External assessments can be helpful when they provide advice for stocks that
2537 cannot be assessed in a timely fashion, thereby assisting with the assessment workload, or when
2538 they contribute additional analyses for consideration in an ongoing assessment. However,
2539 external assessments can also be disruptive, especially when they are provided late in the
2540 management process or without sufficient documentation to critically evaluate the approach. In
2541 these cases, the assessment tends to compete or conflict with the federal stock assessment
2542 without being subject to an equivalent level of peer review. Establishing well-defined ToR for
2543 peer review of externally provided stock assessments, as described earlier, helps to mitigate

2544 some potential concerns. Unless the alternative analyses are contributed early in the
2545 assessment process and included in the peer review, these analyses should not have a strong
2546 influence on management decisions. As the contribution of external assessments continues to
2547 increase, many councils have developed or are developing protocols for including these
2548 assessments in the management process.

2549
2550 Although current approaches to stock assessment quality assurance address MSA mandates and result
2551 in high-quality scientific advice being provided to managers, there is room for improvement as discussed
2552 earlier, and recommendations for addressing these issues are provided in Section III. In particular,
2553 Chapter 10 describes a stock assessment process that strives to be timely and efficient while also
2554 maintaining thoroughness and transparency. These improvements rely on an objective approach to
2555 stock assessment prioritization that will optimize the completion rates of assessments by determining
2556 which stocks need assessments and the level at which those assessments should be conducted.

2557 ***References***

2558 Office of Management and Budget (OMB). 2004. Final Information Quality Bulletin for Peer Review,
2559 Memorandum M-05-03, 45 p.

2560
2561 NOAA. 2016. Magnuson-Stevens Act Provisions, Federal Register vol. 81, no. 158, 81 FR 54561, p.
2562 54561–54564.

2563
2564 NOAA. 2013. Magnuson-Stevens Act Provisions, Federal Register, vol. 78, no. 139, 73 FR 54132, p.
2565 43066-43090.

2566

2567 **Chapter 7—An Introduction to the Future of NOAA Fisheries'** 2568 **Stock Assessments**

2569 **Chapter highlights:**

- 2570 • **Three primary objectives make up NOAA Fisheries' next generation stock assessment (NGSA)**
2571 **enterprise:**
 - 2572 1. **Expand the scope of many stock assessments and support harvest policies that are**
2573 **more holistic and ecosystem-linked following a strategic approach that makes best use**
2574 **of available resources.**
 - 2575 2. **Use innovative science and technological advancements to improve assessments and**
2576 **establish robust harvest policies to manage stocks between assessments.**
 - 2577 3. **Create a more timely, efficient, and effective stock assessment process that prioritizes**
2578 **stock-specific goals and objectives.**

2579 **7.1. Summary of challenges and the need for improvement**

2580 NOAA Fisheries' stock assessment enterprise faces numerous demands from federal operations, fishery
2581 managers, and interested parties. There are conflicting requests to make stock assessments simpler,
2582 more comprehensive, based on better data, ecosystem-linked, more transparent to affected parties,
2583 prioritized, updated using the latest data and model advancements, quicker to produce, and other
2584 demands. Many aspects of these demands are difficult to satisfy and some are mutually exclusive, as
2585 described in the following examples:

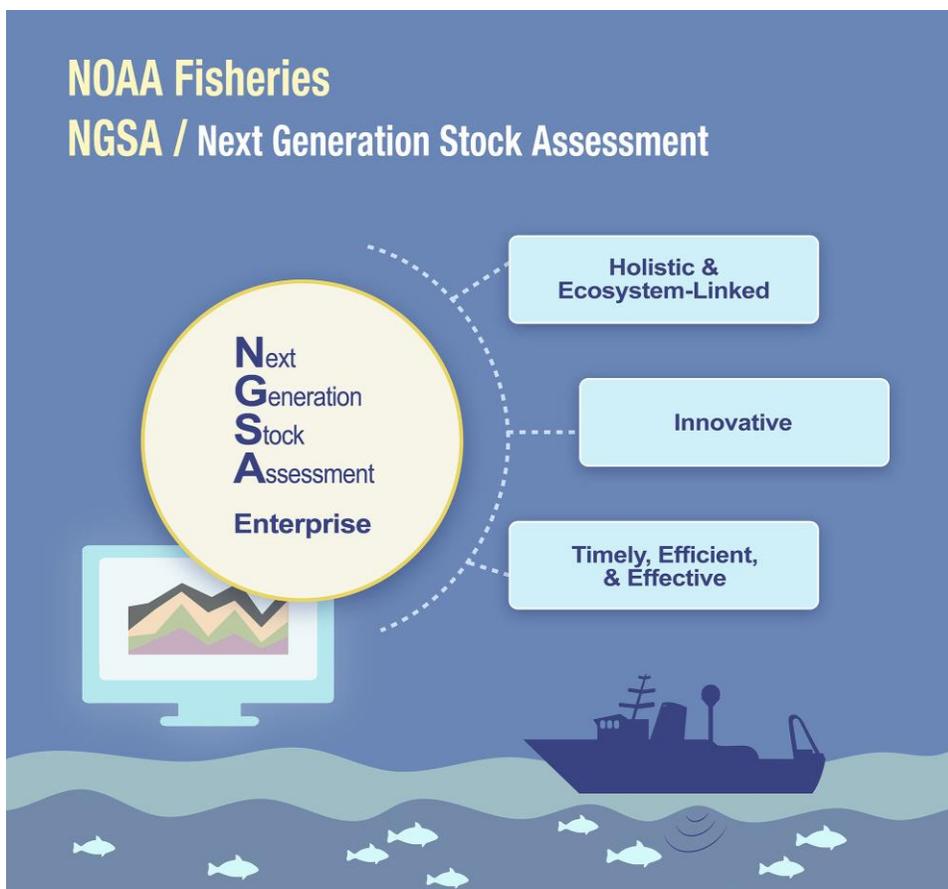
- 2586 • Assessments could be simpler if they had access to reliable, basic data streams regarding the
2587 abundance of fish stocks. Much of the complexity of assessments is due to the advanced
2588 statistical efforts used to overcome various shortcomings in the data.
- 2589 • Assessments could be updated more quickly if they used standardized, streamlined data
2590 systems and standard modeling methods. Improvements to assessment data and models could
2591 then be made by conducting research outside the normal management process, rather than
2592 attempting to develop new operational methods during a constrained management process.
- 2593 • Assessments could be more comprehensive given that data and procedures to build in broader
2594 system-level mechanisms are available. Most assessments incorporate environmental and
2595 ecosystem changes indirectly and without including the actual mechanism driving the changes;
2596 hence, they have very little ability to project changes in future stock conditions that may occur
2597 as a result of future environmental and ecosystem changes.
- 2598 • The effort to include all possible data in an assessment expands the assessment's complexity,
2599 obscures transparency, and reduces efficiency in the process because all data in an assessment
2600 require proper documentation, analysis, and review. Thus, this reduced efficiency is
2601 compounded by the preference for full transparency and comprehensive public review.

2602 The NGSAs framework is designed as a roadmap to address and balance the various demands on the
2603 stock assessment enterprise. There are three main themes to this framework (Figure 7.1):

- 2604 a. Expanding the scope of stock assessments to be more holistic and ecosystem-linked
2605 (Chapter 8)
- 2606 b. Using innovative science and advanced technologies to improve data and analytical
2607 methods (Chapter 9)
- 2608 c. Establishing a timely, efficient, and effective stock assessment process (Chapter 10)

2609

2610 **Figure 7.1.** The three primary objectives that comprise NOAA Fisheries' NGSAs.



2611

2612 **7.2. Holistic and ecosystem-linked stock assessments**

2613 Today, fishery assessments are mainly designed to analyze a dynamic system in which fishing is the
2614 dominant force and ecosystem factors produce random changes that can be dealt with statistically. This
2615 approach has successfully guided fishery management toward preventing overfishing and rebuilding
2616 depleted fish stocks, but it lacks the ability to provide advice that directly accounts for expected changes
2617 in ecosystems. When faced with ecosystems that are shifting into previously unobserved states, which

2618 is an expected result of climate change, the quasi-equilibrium paradigm of contemporary stock
2619 assessments is ill-prepared to deal with shifts in stock productivity. Also, the single-species approach
2620 fails to account for the cumulative effects of fishing on multiple stocks in a regional ecosystem. Further,
2621 contemporary assessments do not account for socioeconomic drivers. Although fishery managers
2622 certainly address socioeconomic considerations when setting catch limits, this information may also be
2623 useful in configuring the sub-models of fishery dynamics within assessments.

2624 Assessments can provide more accurate and comprehensive advice if they expand their scope. However,
2625 it is important to consider potential tradeoffs between expanding the scope of an assessment and the
2626 degree of uncertainty around assessment results. These expansions should be thoroughly vetted by
2627 conducting thoughtful research that facilitates the development and evaluation of expanded methods.
2628 There is a consequence to expanding assessments within the operational assessment process, because
2629 additional data sets can mean additional uncertainty that affects the final assessment results. Moreover,
2630 an expanded assessment scope may require increased resources to maintain the additional data inputs.
2631 Nevertheless, expansions should be routinely considered, and a prioritized approach should be used to
2632 determine which stock assessments should expand in scope and how expansive those assessments
2633 should be. Stock assessments should not necessarily expand to be as inclusive as Integrated Ecosystem
2634 Assessments,²⁰ which address all ocean uses in an ecosystem and take a much broader look at multiple
2635 forcing factors on an ecosystem and at multiple services provided by that ecosystem. However, stock
2636 assessments do serve a function within ecosystem-based fishery management (EBFM) by taking an
2637 ecosystem approach to fishery management to the extent feasible. For instance, assessments can
2638 incorporate ecosystem drivers of dynamic processes in the assessment model. Also, stock assessments
2639 provide important information regarding changes in major ecosystem components and processes, so
2640 these products are useful in the development of system-level advice. Chapter 8 provides a broader
2641 discussion and clearer pathway to achieving more holistic and ecosystem-linked stock assessments.

2642 **7.3. Innovative science**

2643 In general, stock assessments need to produce results with higher accuracy and precision. One way to
2644 achieve this goal is to strive for more highly calibrated data; that is, to “fine tune” a data series so it
2645 better represents true dynamics. This fine-tuning can be achieved through data calibration experiments,
2646 where more complete evaluations of certain assessment inputs are conducted so that the full data
2647 series of those inputs can then be adjusted to better reflect true dynamics over time. This approach may
2648 substantially improve assessments, such as those conducted with relatively simple assessment models
2649 that incorporate only the total catch history over time, and one or more time series of an indicator of
2650 stock abundance (see Table 5.1—Aggregate biomass dynamics models). These models are effective only
2651 if input data accurately capture stock and fishery dynamics, and when there is contrast in the data (i.e.,
2652 high and low levels of fishing and abundance over time). In many cases, stock abundance indicators do
2653 not perfectly represent stock dynamics, especially when they are based on fishery catch rates, which are

²⁰ <http://www.noaa.gov/iea/>

2654 particularly difficult to calibrate over time. Even the absolute knowledge of total catch is challenged as
2655 catch histories are being revisited using new approaches (recreational catches in particular), and as
2656 there is increased awareness of illegal, unreported, and unregulated (IUU) fishing. Contrast in the data is
2657 needed to understand how stocks respond to fishing and how they rebuild from low biomass levels.
2658 However, today's successful fishery management achieves stability, so relatively little contrast is being
2659 realized in recent time periods.

2660 Advanced assessment models (e.g., statistical catch-at-age, see Table 5.1) provide a more complete
2661 description of the effects of fishing on a fish stock, but there are even more concerns about data
2662 calibration in addition to those associated with simpler methods. Advanced assessments incorporate
2663 information on individual growth and the sizes and ages represented in the catch to: 1) ascribe the catch
2664 to the actual age ranges of fish that are affected by the fisheries; 2) account for year-to-year fluctuations
2665 in body growth and the number of young fish entering the stock (i.e., recruitment); and 3) provide direct
2666 evidence of the level of total mortality as represented by the rate of decline in the numbers of older fish.
2667 With additional types of data, the assessment model contains more moving parts that interact and need
2668 simultaneous adjustment (e.g., accurate age, length, maturity, and other biological data is important).
2669 Further, these models also depend on external knowledge of the level of natural mortality and the
2670 possibility that older fish are not as available to fisheries and surveys. Finally, whether simple or
2671 advanced, all models are challenged by major shifts and high year-to-year fluctuations in fish
2672 productivity.

2673 Given these challenges to the performance of modern assessment models, there is a clear need for
2674 more direct calibration of assessment data and more research to better understand and describe fish
2675 stock dynamics and the processes that drive those dynamics.

2676 Chapter 9 describes new scientific and technological developments that may help advance stock
2677 assessments. In particular, there is a focus on achieving a higher calibration of stock abundance data, an
2678 expansion of the data collection and data delivery systems, and utilization of new statistical and
2679 mathematical modeling techniques. Collective investments in these promising areas could result in
2680 measurable improvements in the scientific advice being provided to fishery managers.

2681 **7.4.0 Timely, efficient, and effective stock assessment processes**

2682 To meet many of the increasing demands on NOAA Fisheries' stock assessment programs, there is a
2683 need to improve efficiency in the stock assessment process. Although increased efficiency would result
2684 in more timely advice, it is important that each assessment maintain an appropriate level of detail,
2685 transparency, and review. Each stock assessment should be conducted at a prescribed frequency and
2686 level (data and model richness) in a way that reduces as much as possible the time from data collection
2687 to management adjustment and is sufficiently transparent so that stakeholders have a high level of trust
2688 in the assessment results.

2689 A data-rich assessment that is timely and transparent and occurs for as many stocks as needed is a
2690 substantial challenge. Fortunately, there are potential process-oriented changes that can help guide

2691 NOAA Fisheries' stock assessment programs to best meet the demands associated with each stock. In
2692 particular, NOAA can improve the tracking of the types of data being used in each assessment; can use
2693 and expand the national stock assessment prioritization process to set goals for each stock; and can
2694 evaluate current assessment levels relative to target assessment levels to help identify stock assessment
2695 gaps and meet realistic expectations for each stock. Further, the process of conducting a stock
2696 assessment can be more streamlined. However, this approach should follow a simplified operational
2697 assessment track that relies on standard, reviewed, tested, and documented approaches to to generate
2698 scientific advice for fishery managers. Improvements to assessment data and methods can then be
2699 considered via a parallel research track that allows time for developing, testing, and reviewing new
2700 approaches before they are applied in a management setting. The level of review along the operational
2701 assessment track can be streamlined, allowing improvements to be fully vetted in the research track.
2702 Finally, standardized and streamlined reporting templates can be used to improve transparency in
2703 assessment results while reducing the time required to communicate those results. Chapter 10
2704 describes proposed changes to the way stock assessments are tracked, conducted, and prioritized to
2705 improve the timeliness, efficiency, and effectiveness of stock assessments.

2706

2707 Chapter 8—Holistic and Ecosystem-Linked Stock Assessments

2708 Chapter highlights:

- 2709 • The stock assessment approach should routinely consider ecosystem and socioeconomic
2710 drivers, and these drivers should be addressed as appropriate with a goal of improved
2711 understanding of stock dynamics and improved management advice.
- 2712 • Stock assessment terms of reference (ToR), particularly those for research assessments that
2713 intend to improve an assessment, should formally consider ecosystem and socioeconomic
2714 information.
- 2715 • Stock assessments should include multidisciplinary teams and coordinated access to
2716 ecosystem and socioeconomic reports and research.
- 2717 • A general decision process is provided to guide the consideration of ecosystem and
2718 socioeconomic information in the stock assessment and fishery management process.
- 2719 • There is a need for advancing the decision process and developing comprehensive criteria for
2720 determining the extent of qualitative and quantitative inclusion of ecosystem and
2721 socioeconomic linkages into the stock assessment and management processes.

2722 8.1 Introduction

2723 Fishery scientists, managers, and stakeholders increasingly want to expand the scope of stock
2724 assessments to be informed by ecosystem drivers as well as the social and economic dynamics affecting
2725 fisheries. Stock assessments tend to account for these factors by either assuming that their effects occur
2726 at some constant average level over time, or to allow random variation in stock dynamics that is not
2727 directly guided by specific ecosystem or socioeconomic mechanisms. In many cases, these approaches
2728 are sufficient for achieving fishery management objectives; thus, it is not necessary to expand the scope
2729 of all stock assessments. However, there are stocks for which ecosystem and/or socioeconomic
2730 information may significantly improve the accuracy and precision of assessment results. For these
2731 priority stocks, expansion of the assessments should be supported by research as well as observations
2732 (e.g., ecosystem or socioeconomic data) available at scales appropriate for including in a stock
2733 assessment model. In most cases, substantial resources are required to conduct the research and data
2734 collection necessary to expand an assessment. Therefore, it is important that this work initially be
2735 directed to address the highest priority cases, while simpler approaches to dealing with ecosystem and
2736 socioeconomic factors can be explored for lower priority stocks.

2737 There is no reason to “force” ecosystem or socioeconomic drivers into stock assessments when there is
2738 not clear evidence to support their inclusion. In fact, identifying drivers in such complex systems is very
2739 challenging. The purpose of these expansions is to improve the assessment and account for the major
2740 factors that drive productivity, but if there is not strong evidence for the expansion, the accuracy and
2741 precision of the assessment results may actually decrease. Regardless of whether ecosystem or
2742 socioeconomic information is included in the assessment, there are many options available to account

2743 for these additional drivers in fisheries management. In fact, evaluating ecosystem-level tradeoffs is a
2744 core feature of ecosystem-based fisheries management (EBFM).²¹ This evaluation may best be
2745 accomplished through system-level simulation studies, such as management strategy evaluations
2746 (MSEs), and not stock assessments. However, system-level MSEs rely upon stock assessment results, so
2747 improved stock assessments remain fundamental to improving fisheries management. This chapter,
2748 with chapter 10, provides the context and vision for expanding the scope of more stock assessments to
2749 be linked to ecosystem and socioeconomic factors. Examples of stock assessments that incorporate
2750 ecosystem linkages are presented to demonstrate how understanding and advice are improved.

2751 **8.2 Why stock assessments should be expanded**

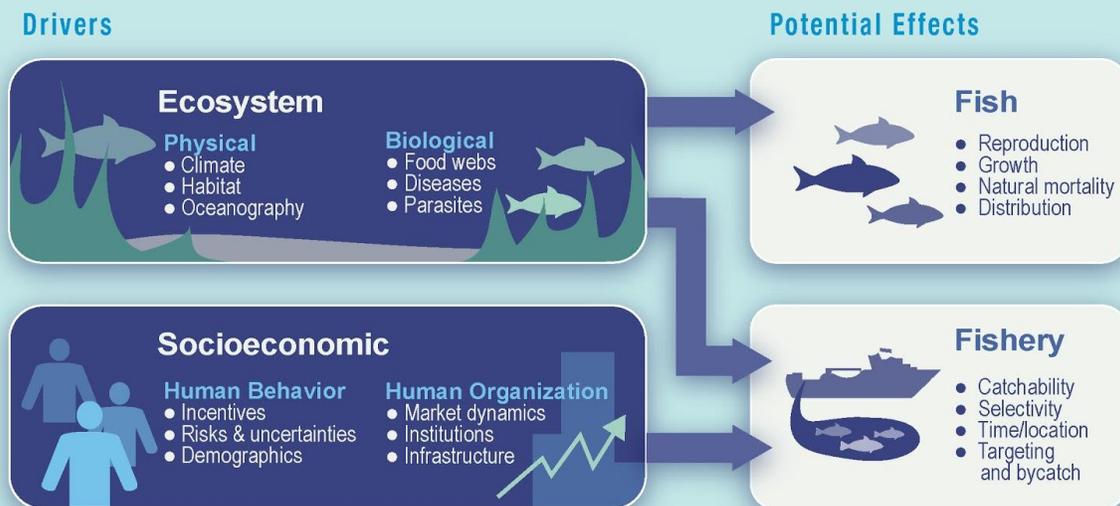
2752 The fishery stock assessment process uses biological reference points to support stock status
2753 determinations and the application of harvest control rules to support the development of short-term
2754 catch recommendations. In most cases, stock assessments use an historical analysis to determine
2755 biological reference points and then project models based on historical data to determine future
2756 catches. With climate change and other processes affecting marine ecosystems, a primary challenge
2757 facing stock assessment science is how to establish biological reference points and apply harvest control
2758 rules in complex environments that are experiencing constant change. In some cases, long-term
2759 sustainability may be fully understood and achieved by directly incorporating ecosystem and
2760 socioeconomic considerations into the process of determining stock status and developing catch
2761 recommendations. In other cases, it may be sufficient to ensure that robust control rules are in place
2762 and that they are adaptable to variations, such as those caused by climate change and ecosystem
2763 variability.

2764 There are many features of an ecosystem and many socioeconomic factors that can affect both fish
2765 stock productivity and fishery dynamics (Figure 8.1). For example, predation mortality alone can
2766 considerably alter the status of a stock (Tyrrell et al., 2011), and changing thermal conditions impact the
2767 distribution, growth, recruitment, and productivity of numerous stocks (Keyl and Wolff, 2008). In some
2768 cases, these factors can be the dominant drivers of stock dynamics, especially as fishery management
2769 has reduced fishing pressure to sustainable levels. Yet those considerations are not often included in
2770 stock assessment models, assumed to be encapsulated in typical assessment model parameters, or
2771 included as random variation. Thus, in many instances, better incorporating these ecosystem linkages
2772 into the stock assessment process is warranted. Although assessment analysts are open and willing to
2773 include additional factors into the assessments, there can be hesitation when relationships with stock
2774 or fishery dynamics is not well understood, when data are not readily available in appropriate formats,
2775 or when it is unclear how best to include the information in an assessment model. These challenges
2776 emphasize the need for investing in research to support more holistic stock assessments.

2777 **Figure 8.1.** Ecosystem and socioeconomic processes affecting fish and fisheries.

²¹ <http://www.nmfs.noaa.gov/op/pds/index.html>

Potential Linkages Between Ecosystem/Socioeconomic Drivers and Fish/Fisheries



2778

2779 Part of the stock assessment process involves the use of diagnostic tools to evaluate how well a stock
2780 assessment model is configured. When assessment models exhibit poor diagnostics, one or more factors
2781 may be the cause. For example, an assumption about the population dynamics may be incorrect, a key
2782 factor may be missing from the model, or there may be unaddressed problems with the input data. If
2783 unresolved, poor diagnostics indicate that the model is not performing appropriately, and therefore the
2784 quality of the resulting scientific advice is questionable. Although models with questionable skill can still
2785 be used in a management context, the scientific uncertainty in the results should be characterized in a
2786 way that accounts for the poor model skill. Further, poor model diagnostics warrant a full investigation
2787 into the cause. In some cases, a simple fix within the assessment process can improve model
2788 diagnostics; in other cases, research studies are necessary to improve models outside the operational
2789 process (see Chapter 10 for more on research and operational assessment tracks). Regardless of the
2790 time and resources required for investigation, often poor model diagnostics are due to an assumption
2791 that some process is constant over time when in actuality the process changes appreciably. Thus, one
2792 common area that may improve model diagnostics is to more broadly explore ecosystem linkages in
2793 stock assessments models. However, because stock assessments are a simplification of very complex
2794 dynamics, the challenge lies in determining an appropriate level of linking assessments to the ecosystem
2795 without making the model too complex for the current goal.

2796 8.3 When to expand stock assessments

2797 Adding ecosystem or socioeconomic linkages to stock assessment models is not necessary in all cases.
2798 Doing so may not improve model diagnostics, may not provide a better representation of stock or
2799 ecosystem dynamics, and may not improve the management advice resulting from the modeling process
2800 (e.g., Punt et al., 2013). Yet a systematic, structured, decision-criteria approach based on first principles
2801 may help identify those situations that generally warrant closer examination of ecosystem or
2802 socioeconomic considerations and potential inclusion of such linkages in the stock assessment process.

2803 Ideally, the decision to expand a stock assessment should be supported by thorough research into the
2804 drivers affecting a stock's dynamics combined with a full investigation (e.g., management strategy
2805 evaluation) of the costs and benefits of expanding the assessment. However, resources are not sufficient
2806 to support such a methodical approach for all stocks. Thus, a standard, cross-cutting triage exercise is
2807 needed to support the decision process for all stocks in a region. Conducting such exercises would not
2808 only serve to improve single-species assessments, but would also accomplish essential steps in the
2809 transition to EBFM. A relatively simple triage approach that integrates with the stock assessment
2810 prioritization process is described in Chapter 10. Numerous other methods have been developed (Levin
2811 et al., 2009; Link, 2010; Hobday et al., 2011) and examples have been applied in a fisheries context.
2812 These approaches are often termed "ecological risk assessment" and they serve to identify the major
2813 pressures and threats facing a group of species relative to their individual vulnerabilities to multiple
2814 threats. Any number of these methods could be used to inform decisions about the scope of a stock
2815 assessment as well as support the prioritization effort described in Chapter 10.

2816 A stock's natural mortality is one component of a stock assessment that is inherently connected to
2817 ecosystem drivers. This value is challenging to estimate in stock assessments and is often estimated or
2818 assumed by including as a fixed input to an assessment model. Although it is often accepted that natural
2819 mortality varies over time and by age, it is common to assign it a constant value because there may not
2820 be enough data available to estimate the change, and typically there are not obvious theoretical or
2821 mechanistic linkages to ecological processes. In essence, natural mortality in a stock assessment model
2822 represents an integration of numerous complex and interacting processes. However, natural mortality
2823 of fishes that make up a substantial forage base for predators may be driven by the biomass of the key
2824 predator species. These stocks in particular represent good candidates for additional examination and
2825 exploration of predation mortality. Focusing on predator dynamics for forage species' natural mortality
2826 is an example of a simple triage approach to identify one important ecological process for a subset of
2827 stocks while eliminating species that do not experience significant predation mortality. The approach to
2828 examining predation mortality for a given stock could vary (see Section 8.5), but knowing that it could be
2829 an issue from the triage exercise would help highlight and prioritize the research.

2830 Natural mortality represents one of many aspects to consider when triaging stocks to determine which
2831 assessments should be expanded to include ecosystem and/or socioeconomic factors. Figure 8.1
2832 provides an overview of the many factors and effects that should be considered when constructing stock
2833 assessments. Although Figure 8.1 is a relatively simple diagram, there are numerous variations of
2834 potential interactions between drivers and stock and fishery dynamics. From these triage exercises,

2835 development of decision trees and recommended practices would naturally follow to delineate those
2836 conditions when ecosystem and/or socioeconomic linkages are high priority and which factors should be
2837 considered. Using criteria related to data availability, model diagnostics, model skill, model structure,
2838 known or hypothesized mechanisms, key processes and dynamics, key model parameterizations, and
2839 risk minimization would all be formulated to suggest particular approaches that could be used in the
2840 stock assessment process. For instance, decisions on creating ecosystem linkages in stock assessments
2841 are made in the context of several considerations:

- 2842 1. Based on the stock's value, status, and biology, is there an incentive to expand its
2843 assessment to include ecosystem or socioeconomic factors?
- 2844 2. Is there evidence to suggest that stock or fishery dynamics are tightly coupled with some
2845 variable ecosystem or socioeconomic feature?
- 2846 3. Are data available to model this relationship within the assessment framework?
- 2847 4. Can ecosystem or socioeconomic dynamics be incorporated in a way that maintains a
2848 manageable assessment model?
- 2849 5. Can the relationship between stock, fishery, and ecosystem or socioeconomic dynamics be
2850 forecasted with at least a moderate degree of certainty?

2851 Here, it is recommended that the stock assessment process include two steps:

- 2852 1. Use Figure 8.1 as a framework for conducting a simple qualitative evaluation of potential
2853 ecosystem or socioeconomic linkages.
- 2854 2. Evaluate the results of the target setting process described in Chapter 10 in combination with
2855 the previous considerations list to determine whether it is technically feasible, and worth the
2856 effort, to expand a particular assessment.

2857 This systematic approach does not likely fit well into the operational stock assessment cycle, but
2858 should be developed in a parallel research assessment track (see Chapter 10) that is designed to
2859 improve operational assessments. Simply, research assessments should be guided by relatively
2860 generic, nationally consistent, standing terms of reference that include attention to ecosystem and
2861 socioeconomic considerations. The decision to expand assessments should not be based solely on
2862 the detection of correlations between factors, but rather through thoughtful consideration at each
2863 step and connection outlined earlier. Even if it is not deemed appropriate to expand an assessment
2864 to include ecosystem or socioeconomic linkages, the process of evaluating stock and fishery
2865 dynamics from a broader system-level perspective is generally beneficial. These evaluations should
2866 be well-coordinated with the implementation of EBFM. In particular, management councils will be
2867 developing more Fishery Ecosystem Plans (FEPs) and this process may provide a good opportunity to
2868 assemble an interdisciplinary group that evaluates various ecosystem processes and their effects on
2869 fish and fisheries. Thus, the FEP development process could provide direct guidance for research
2870 assessments.

2871 **8.4 How to expand stock assessments**

2872 The manner in which ecosystem and socioeconomic considerations can be included into the stock
2873 assessment process is broad and varied. This information can be used to provide context for interpreting
2874 stock assessment results and evaluating system-level effects of harvest recommendations; for
2875 diagnosing issues with stock assessment models; for forming hypotheses of how stock assessments
2876 could be improved; as leading indicators of potential change to prioritize assessment research and
2877 activities; or for adjusting or scaling the harvest advice that derives from a stock assessment. Finally, the
2878 information can be directly incorporated into stock assessment models as covariates and/or as new
2879 model components that describe ecosystem or socioeconomic mechanisms. Table 8.1 expands upon the
2880 processes described in Figure 8.1 to provide additional details on how stock assessments can include
2881 ecosystem or socioeconomic information. Thus, there are several ways in which additional information
2882 can be included in the stock assessment process, but what is appropriate for any given stock, ecosystem,
2883 or management plan depends on several factors.

2884 At one end of this spectrum are purely qualitative approaches. These include the strategic use of
2885 additional documents and information, including ecosystem status reports, ecosystem considerations
2886 already in stock assessments, socioeconomic reports, and relevant research products. This
2887 supplementary information can help shape management advice, such as guide the establishment of
2888 harvest rates that are responsive to changing conditions rather than assume equilibrium conditions;
2889 suggest the current productivity state of the environment, which is useful in guiding approaches to
2890 forecasting catch advice; and highlight possible upcoming changes that may warrant a reconsideration
2891 of future harvest levels or the frequency and approach by which assessments will be conducted. These
2892 qualitative approaches represent simple acknowledgments that changing ecosystems and
2893 socioeconomics affect fish and fisheries. They also fit well within current management approaches by
2894 helping to communicate uncertainty in stock assessment results and providing guidance on how harvest
2895 recommendations may be adjusted to account for this uncertainty.

2896 At the other end of the spectrum are more formalized, quantitative approaches. Quantitative
2897 approaches generally seek to link stock assessment models to ecosystem and/or socioeconomic factors.
2898 This task can be completed either by directly adjusting selected model parameters or structures, or by
2899 providing an index that informs the model's estimation of particular parameters or trends in stock
2900 dynamics. The qualitative and quantitative methods are not mutually exclusive, and neither is superior
2901 to the other, but rather their appropriateness is situation specific.

2902 It is not necessary to force ecosystem or socioeconomic information into every stock assessment. The
2903 important point in this chapter is that the stock assessment process should include a systematic
2904 approach to considering how stocks and fisheries are affected by changes related to ecosystems and
2905 socioeconomics, and where/how appropriate, those considerations should be included. Chapter 10
2906 describes a simple approach to evaluating, across stocks, assessments that should be expanded to
2907 include ecosystem information. Then, Figure 8.1 combined with Table 8.1 and the considerations listed

2908 earlier, represent the generic thought process to determine how a stock's assessment could be
 2909 expanded/improved. This decision process needs to be tested and improved, but the guidance provided
 2910 here and in Chapter 10 is designed as a starting point.

2911 **Table 8.1.** Level of ecosystem linkages and how they could inform the stock assessment process.
 2912 1 = context within which stock assessment results can be better interpreted, 2 = forming
 2913 hypotheses of how the stock assessment model could be altered, 3 = a leading indicator of
 2914 potential change, 4 = changing stock assessment model parameters to account for ecosystem
 2915 conditions, 5 = inclusion of ecosystem data as a covariate in a stock assessment model, 6 =
 2916 inclusion of ecosystem data as a mechanistically linked, directly modeled process, 7 = to direct
 2917 inclusion in development of harvest control rules.

		Pressures	Stock Assessment Factors	Linkage Levels
Ecosystem	Physical	Habitat (pelagic, benthic)	Distribution, abundance, selectivity, catchability, movement	1 through 6
		Climate (large-scale)	Distribution, maturity, growth, abundance, movement, consumption, reference points, projections, harvest control rules	1 through 7
		Winds (speed, upwelling)	Growth, abundance, catchability, recruitment, movement, projections	1 through 6
		Temperature/Salinity (surface, profile)	Distribution, maturity, growth, abundance, selectivity, catchability, recruitment, movement, consumption, reference points, projections	1 through 6
		Nutrients (nitrate, ammonium, iron)	Growth, recruitment, consumption	1 through 3
		Chemistry (acidification, hypoxia)	Maturity, abundance, harvest control rules	1 through 3
		Oceanography (current, height)	Distribution, growth, recruitment, projections	1 through 6
	Biological	Plankton (phyto, zoo, micro)	Recruitment	1 through 6
		Ichthyoplankton (eggs, larvae)	Recruitment	1 through 6
		Fish (juvenile, adult, spawning)	All Factors	1 through 7
		Diet (food web, competition)	Natural mortality, growth, abundance, recruitment, reference points	1 through 7
		Stress (predators, parasite, disease)	Natural mortality, reference points	1 through 6
Socioeconomic	Behavior	Incentive (food, job, tradition)	Catch, abundance	1 through 2
		Bycatch (avoidance, retention)	Distribution, catch, abundance, reference points, harvest control rules	1 through 7
		Social Impacts (non-catch, tourism)	Catch, abundance	1 through 2, 7
		Risk & Uncertainty (investment)	Harvest control rules	1 through 2, 7
	Organization	Demographics (fleet size, gear type)	Catch, selectivity, catchability	1 through 7
		Market Dynamics (price)	Catch, selectivity	1 through 2, 7
		Institutions (councils, certification)	Catch, selectivity	1 through 2, 7
		Infrastructure (docks, plants, ports)	Catch, abundance, catchability	1 through 2
Navigation/Shipping	Selectivity, catchability	1 through 2		

2918

2919 **8.5. Multiple stocks in an ecosystem**

2920 In addition to expanding the scope of stock assessments by incorporating ecosystem or socioeconomic
2921 data, assessments can also be expanded through the coordinated evaluation of their results. For
2922 instance, the results from a collection of stock assessments within an ecosystem or fishing community
2923 may be combined to understand how stock dynamics are related and how communities are affected by
2924 variable harvests. This coordinated evaluation may facilitate the establishment of fishing levels across
2925 multiple stocks to conserve ecosystem functioning while optimizing fishing opportunity. Such an
2926 approach to fishery management is described in the revised NS1 Guidelines, which mention that harvest
2927 limits can be estimated for a group of stocks and these aggregate reference points can be used to
2928 optimize yield for the entire group. In fact, this approach is already in place in certain regions. For
2929 instance, a 2-million ton system-level cap is imposed on groundfish stocks in the North Pacific Ocean
2930 (Bering Sea-Aleutian Islands). This cap facilitates maximizing the catch of the most important stocks
2931 while reducing catches of other stocks to sustain biomass in the system. Overall, the coordinated
2932 evaluation of multiple stocks may enable the development of system or community-level harvest
2933 policies. In other words, harvest policies that account for interacting stocks, total fish production in a
2934 system, as well as cumulative or indirect effects of fishery or ecosystem dynamics. This system-level
2935 approach is an important component of NOAA Fisheries' EBFM Road Map²² and represents a critical
2936 connection between fish population dynamics and ecosystem science. As described in the EBFM Road
2937 Map, an appropriate place for these system-level approaches is within the regional Fishery Ecosystem
2938 Plans.

2939 Evaluating stocks and their assessments at the ecosystem or community level provides additional
2940 benefits beyond the establishment of coordinated harvest policies. By conducting multi-stock
2941 evaluations, certain features of an ecosystem or set of fishing practices may be highlighted as important
2942 drivers that affect multiple stocks simultaneously. For example, if a group of stocks exhibits a relatively
2943 drastic change in abundance at a certain time, there may be many potential causes worth evaluating,
2944 such as environmental shifts or changes in fishermen targeting behavior. It may then be efficient to
2945 address these issues in a way that is most beneficial to the whole system. Other benefits of coordinated
2946 evaluations relate to the assessment and management process. For instance, if issues arise, either with
2947 the data, analyses, or other step in the process, then it will be apparent if those same issues apply to
2948 multiple stocks. The issues may then be addressed so that they benefit the entire system/community.
2949 Along those lines, a multi-stock evaluation also facilitates a system-level gap analysis. If certain gaps
2950 apply to multiple stocks then there may be efficient ways to address those gaps and improve
2951 assessments for many stocks.

2952 **8.6. Conclusions**

2953 With changing ecosystems and complex socioeconomic factors driving stock and fishery dynamics, it is
2954 important that the scope of stock assessments expands to support more holistic approaches to fishery
2955 management. These expansions can occur by including ecosystem or socioeconomic factors in individual

²² <http://www.nmfs.noaa.gov/op/pds/index.html>

2956 stock assessments, or through the coordinated evaluation of single species assessments at the
2957 ecosystem or community level. At a minimum, it is important that the potential drivers and decision
2958 points discussed in this chapter be considered during the stock assessment process, potentially
2959 facilitated through the development and implementation of FEPs. The ultimate goal of these
2960 considerations is to improve assessments and the advice being provided to fishery managers in an
2961 attempt to prevent overfishing while achieving optimum yield for fisheries. Given the strong connection
2962 between system-level thinking and EBFM, this chapter emphasizes the fundamental connection
2963 between single-species stock assessments and EBFM. Thus, improving assessments through expanding
2964 their scope not only improves single species fisheries management, but is also important in achieving
2965 EBFM.

2966 **References**

- 2967 Baker, J. D., E. A. Howell, and J. J. Polovina. 2012. Relative influence of climate variability and direct
2968 anthropogenic impact on a sub-tropical Pacific top predator, the Hawaiian monk seal. *Mar. Ecol.*
2969 *Prog. Ser.* 469:175–189. <https://doi.org/10.3354/meps09987>
- 2970 Baker, J. D., J. J. Polovina, and E.A. Howell. 2007. Effect of variable oceanic productivity on the survival of
2971 an upper trophic predator, the Hawaiian monk seal, *Monachus schauinslandi*. *Mar. Ecol. Prog. Ser.*
2972 346:277–283. <https://doi.org/10.3354/meps06968>
- 2973 Hobday, A. J., A. D. M. Smith, I. C. Stobutzki, C. Bulman, R. Daley, J. M. Dambacher, R. A. Deng, J.
2974 Dowdney, M. Fuller, D. Furlani, S. P. Griffiths, D. Johnson, R. Kenyon, I. A. Knuckey, S. D. Ling, R.
2975 Pitcher, K. J. Sainsbury, M. Sporcic, T. Smith, C. Turnbull, T. I. Walker, S. E. Wayte, H. Webb, A.
2976 Williams, B. S. Wise, and S. Zhou. 2011. Ecological risk assessment for the effects of fishing. *Fish. Res.*
2977 108(2–3):372–384. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.fishres.2011.01.013>
- 2978 Keyl, F., and M. Wolff. 2008. Environmental variability and fisheries: what can models do? *Rev. Fish.*
2979 *Biol. Fish.* 18:273. <https://doi.org/10.1007/s11160-007-9075-5>
- 2980 Levin, P. S., M. J. Fogarty, S. A. Murawski, and D. Fluharty. 2009. Integrated ecosystem assessments:
2981 developing the scientific basis for ecosystem-based management of the ocean. *PloS Biology*
2982 7(1):e1000014. <https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pbio.1000014>
- 2983 Link, J. S. 2010. *Ecosystem-based fisheries management: confronting tradeoffs*, 224 p. Cambridge Univ.
2984 Press, Cambridge, England.
- 2985 Polovina, J. J., E. Howell, D. R. Kobayashi, and M. P. Seki. 2001. The transition zone chlorophyll front, a
2986 dynamic global feature defining migration and forage habitat for marine resources. *Prog. Oceanogr.*
2987 49:469–483. [https://doi.org/10.1016/S0079-6611\(01\)00036-2](https://doi.org/10.1016/S0079-6611(01)00036-2)
- 2988 Punt, A. E., T. A'mar, N. A. Bond, D. S. Butterworth, C. L. de Moor, J. A. A. De Oliveira, M. A. Haltuch, A. B.
2989 Hollowed, and C. Szuwalski. 2013. Fisheries management under climate and environmental

- 2990 uncertainty: control rules and performance simulation. ICES J. Mar. Sci.
2991 <https://doi.org/10.1093/icesjms/fst057>
- 2992 Tyrrell, M. C., J. S. Link, and H. Moustahfid. 2011. The importance of including predation in fish
2993 population models: implications for biological reference points. Fish. Res. 108:1–8.
2994 <http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.fishres.2010.12.025>
- 2995

2996 Chapter 9—Innovative Science for Improving Stock 2997 Assessments

2998 Chapter highlights:

- 2999 • **Changing systems and mixed-stock fisheries warrant development, testing, and**
3000 **implementation of ecosystem-linked and multispecies assessment methods.**
- 3001 • **Strategic investments in data collection and statistical and analytical assessment methods are**
3002 **needed to meet the demand for increasing the quantity and quality of stock assessments.**
- 3003 • **Investments in advanced sampling technologies should be guided by stock and ecosystem**
3004 **assessment priorities, and should enhance NOAA's infrastructure with integrated survey and**
3005 **ocean observation systems.**
- 3006 • **Advancing the research and development of advanced sampling technologies requires**
3007 **partnerships among academic institutions, industry, and other agencies.**
- 3008 • **Calibration studies are necessary for enhancing ongoing data collection operations with new**
3009 **technologies, particularly when attempting to generate direct estimates of stock abundance.**
- 3010 • **General modeling frameworks that facilitate ease of use, robust testing, community-level**
3011 **development, modular applications, and best practices are needed.**
- 3012 • **Improved use of decision analysis tools and ensemble modeling techniques will better convey**
3013 **uncertainty for risk analysis in fishery management decisions.**

3015 9.1. Introduction

3016 Stock assessments are conducted via a multi-step interdisciplinary partnership (Chapter 1) to provide
3017 reliable, complete, and transparent advice to fishery managers. Many of the fundamental scientific
3018 achievements and evolution that form the basis for fisheries science and management today were
3019 realized in the twentieth century (Quinn, 2003). Contemporary stock assessments build upon these early
3020 accomplishments as well as new developments (Methot, 2009), thereby representing a synthesis of
3021 scientific achievements within each step of the process: data collection and processing, stock
3022 assessment modeling, and developing and communicating recommendations. Advancements in stock
3023 assessment science have not only been achieved within the field of fisheries science, but
3024 accomplishments in other disciplines are also being leveraged (e.g., mathematics and statistics,
3025 computer technology and programming, ecology, advanced sampling technologies, sample design, and
3026 risk management). Therefore, the stock assessments of today can benefit from data collected by a
3027 variety of technologies and in accordance with sound statistical designs, access to advanced computing
3028 power that facilitates the rapid execution of big data analysis using complex mathematical and statistical
3029 algorithms, and sophisticated approaches to visualizing and interpreting risk and uncertainty associated
3030 with a range of management scenarios.

3031 Despite the numerous advances in stock assessment science during the past century, meeting current
3032 demands for an increased quality and quantity of assessments will require a stronger reliance on
3033 innovative science and technology. Chapter 4 provided an overview of the current state of data
3034 collection for fishery stock assessments, and Chapter 5 described the status of assessment models in
3035 NOAA Fisheries. This chapter offers several potential improvements related to new, innovative science
3036 that may apply to the entire stock assessment process. Many of the ideas in this chapter are not new,
3037 but are already in varying stages of development, testing, and/or use. Although suggestions described in
3038 this chapter could potentially improve stock assessments, they should not be adopted for all
3039 assessments, but rather through a thoughtful and strategic decision process, because there may be
3040 limited resources and/or tradeoffs to consider. These tradeoffs emphasize the overlapping and
3041 integrated nature of the elements of the next generation stock assessment enterprise described
3042 throughout Section 3. The following subsections provide detailed recommendations related to
3043 innovative science to benefit the stock assessment process, and they should be considered along with
3044 improvements to efficiency and prioritization (Chapter 10) and to expand the scope of stock
3045 assessments (Chapter 8).

3046 **9.2. Innovations in data collection and processing**

3047 The reliability of stock assessment results is directly related to the quality of available data. In other
3048 words, if data are not available, or if the information contained in the data is not informative with
3049 regard to stock or fishery dynamics, then stock assessment results should be interpreted with caution.
3050 Certainly, quantitatively characterizing the uncertainty in assessments became increasingly important
3051 after the adoption of uncertainty-based buffers between the overfishing level and a recommended
3052 catch level. Many of the recommendations in this section pertain to innovative science and technology
3053 that may expand and improve the data collected for stock assessments. However, there is also a need
3054 for recommendations and innovation related to the general processes and practices of data collection.
3055 For instance, changes and investments in data collection operations must be made strategically;
3056 therefore, a national group may be necessary to coordinate and prioritize those changes and
3057 investments. Establishing such a group within NOAA Fisheries is recommended here to conduct strategic
3058 planning for stock assessment data and to work with the gaps and recommendations resulting from the
3059 stock assessment prioritization exercise (Chapter 10) as well as with other relevant national working
3060 groups (e.g., advanced sampling technologies, stock assessment methods, and survey vessel
3061 coordinators). Although regional experts have the best knowledge of data gaps for particular species,
3062 changes in funding often occur nationally. Thus, a national group that is coordinated across regions and
3063 connected with other national strategic efforts is ideal for conducting a comprehensive gap analysis of
3064 stock assessment surveys to evaluate the sufficiency of sampling coverage and intensity across stocks,
3065 and to determine where new technologies and other investments can be considered to address data
3066 gaps. This group can coordinate across stock assessment data inputs with a goal of obtaining the
3067 appropriate level of sampling for each stock, implemented with methodologies and technologies to
3068 provide data for stock assessments in a way that best meets management objectives.

3069 **9.2.1 Fishery-independent data**

3070 As discussed in Chapter 4, fishery-independent data sources are important for understanding and
3071 monitoring fish stocks and provide fundamental inputs to assessments. Thus, maintaining and
3072 expanding (where necessary) NOAA's fish survey capabilities is crucial to improving stock assessments.
3073 The ongoing work to ensure a sufficient and functioning NOAA fleet, charter vessel arrangements, well-
3074 designed surveys, and integration of new technologies and ocean observing systems is necessary for
3075 maintaining these important data streams.

3076 Opportunities for improving the data already being collected for stock assessments also exist. A primary
3077 focus of fishery-independent surveys is to estimate a time series of stock abundance that serves as input
3078 to the stock assessment model (Chapter 1). In most cases, abundance trends from surveys are relative;
3079 that is, they capture proportional changes in stock size but not absolute measures of abundance each
3080 year. The assessment models can infer absolute abundance from the trend information if the time series
3081 trend is long enough to provide contrast (i.e., show declines when catch is high and increases when
3082 catch is low). However, such contrast is not assured, and information on absolute stock abundance that
3083 comes directly from the survey is beneficial and easily included in contemporary assessment models.
3084 Obtaining measures of absolute biomass from surveys does not necessarily require new types of
3085 surveys, but can be achieved through research on existing surveys. For instance, if the surveys are
3086 calibrated to measure the proportion of the available biomass sampled (catchability) and the likelihood
3087 of sampling fish of a given age (selectivity), then absolute abundance can be estimated. Therefore,
3088 resources should be directed at research on survey catchability and selectivity to work toward better
3089 survey calibration and facilitate estimates of absolute abundance for priority stocks whose assessments
3090 would benefit most from this information (advanced sampling technologies [Section 9.2.3] may be
3091 helpful in conducting this type of research). The potential for improving stock assessments with better
3092 calibrated surveys is high, particularly in cases where other stock assessment data (e.g., catch and
3093 biology) are limited or highly uncertain.

3094 Another issue affecting the quality of abundance data from stock assessment surveys is changing species
3095 distributions. Many stocks are responding to climate variability and climate change by shifting their
3096 distributions in a variety of ways (Nye et al., 2009; Pinsky et al., 2013). For surveys, particularly those
3097 with fixed sampling-designs, these shifts may compromise the ability to estimate abundance trends,
3098 particularly when stocks shift outside of the surveyed area. In other words, distribution shifts may cause
3099 survey catchability to vary over time, yet it is often assumed to be constant when estimating abundance.
3100 Thus, there is a relationship between species distributions and the recommendation calling for better
3101 understanding of survey catchability. Part of that work will be related to researching species
3102 distributions and habitat associations as related to survey designs. In some cases, it may be appropriate
3103 to alter and/or expand survey designs so they track and respond to shifting distributions. Ocean
3104 observation systems (autonomous and fixed platforms) are good options for supplementing the spatial
3105 coverage of surveys without increasing ship time. In other cases, it may be sufficient to calibrate surveys

3106 with respect to climate so that annual catchability for a particular species can be characterized (Adams
3107 et al., 2015).

3108 **9.2.2 Fishery-dependent data**

3109 Data collected from fisheries provide fundamental information for stock assessments on numerous
3110 factors (e.g., total catch, fishing strategies, catch composition—species, ages, sizes, sexes, and bycatch
3111 and discarding practices). Fishery catch rates are also occasionally analyzed to characterize changes in
3112 stock abundance over time, commonly for stocks that do not have dedicated abundance surveys. As
3113 described in Chapter 4, fishery-dependent abundance trends are necessary in certain scenarios, but
3114 these catch rates are hard to validate as a good indicator of stock abundance and must be treated
3115 carefully. Because many harvested stocks do not have dedicated surveys, it could be very beneficial to
3116 partner with fisheries to obtain more reliable estimates of abundance. Where there is a gap in survey
3117 coverage, and when funds are not available for establishing a scientific survey, the fisheries presence on
3118 the water represents a great opportunity for collaboration. The recommendation here is to establish
3119 more partnerships with the fishing industry and explore low-cost scientific work as part of normal fishing
3120 operations where some subset of fishing activity is conducted according to a sampling design. Such
3121 partnerships offer many benefits, such as filling critical data gaps, building stakeholder engagement and
3122 trust, and improving assessments and management. Overall, this approach would be less involved than
3123 surveys conducted with chartered fishing vessels but more standardized than the approaches currently
3124 used to extract abundance trends from fishery catch rates. In cases where fisheries cannot conduct
3125 scientific sampling, another option may be to impose a sampling design for a given stock and subsample
3126 catch rates from fishermen's logbook data according to that design. In this way, the fishery is retrofitted
3127 (roughly) as a survey.

3128 Given that fisheries represent the primary sources of many key inputs to stock assessments, there is a
3129 general need to optimize the ways in which fisheries are monitored. For instance, fishery observers
3130 provide necessary information related to incidentally caught species ("bycatch"), catch composition, and
3131 fishing practices for commercial fisheries, yet many fisheries have little or no observer coverage. For
3132 recreational fisheries, phone, mail, and dockside surveys are typically used to generate estimates of
3133 catch, effort, fishing strategies, and discards. These surveys will never provide complete accounting of
3134 recreational catches, but in an effort to improve estimates for federally managed stocks, the Marine
3135 Recreational Information Program (MRIP) recently optimized its statistical sampling design. Commercial
3136 fishery observer programs, particularly in regions with limited observer coverage, may also consider
3137 revising and expanding their sampling strategies. The ultimate goal is to provide accurate information
3138 for stock assessment and management, but given limited resources in certain regions, the following
3139 questions are of importance:

- 3140 • What is the effect of different levels of observer coverage?
- 3141 • How should observers be distributed over time, space, and across vessels in a fishery?
- 3142 • Which stocks are highest priorities for higher/lower observer coverage?

3143 Answers to these questions are important and may be best addressed in a management strategy
3144 evaluation (MSE) context (Section 9.3.3), but they are central for optimizing the collection of critical
3145 fishery-dependent data.

3146 Another recommendation to improve the collection and provision of fishery-dependent data for stock
3147 assessments is through an increased use of electronic monitoring and electronic reporting (EM/ER).²³
3148 These electronic technologies allow fishermen to record their catches and fishing activities and make
3149 that information available in near real-time. There are also platforms, such as video camera systems,
3150 that can be used to monitor catches as they are brought onboard. Such systems could potentially offer
3151 an option for a low-cost expansion of observer coverage, as well as for catch accounting in Alaska. These
3152 technologies do not represent a viable replacement for observer programs, but they can be used
3153 to enhance observer-collected data. NOAA Fisheries has already invested in research, development, and
3154 testing of EM/ER, and a small number of fisheries have implemented these innovative approaches to
3155 data collection and monitoring of commercial fisheries. In 2016, Congress appropriated \$7 million for
3156 implementation of EM and ER in U.S. fisheries; these funds are expected to continue. Overall, these
3157 technologies may offer improvements to fishery-dependent data collection; therefore, the use of EM/ER
3158 will continue to be explored.

3159 This section calls for increases in fishery-dependent data collection, but there are various costs to
3160 consider in doing so. A primary expense is the cost associated with expanded operations (i.e., new
3161 equipment and staff time for data collection and program management). However, there are added
3162 costs related to processing and analyzing more data. These costs cannot be overlooked, because in
3163 many cases, resource availability for data processing and preparation is a major factor that constrains
3164 the throughput of assessments. This issue is addressed in more detail in Section 9.2.5.

3165 **9.2.3 New data types**

3166 Chapter 8 described the need and approach for expanding the scope of stock assessments to consider
3167 the effects and inclusion of ecosystem and socioeconomic impacts. As consideration of these effects
3168 becomes more common in stock assessments, a broader collection of supporting ecosystem and
3169 socioeconomic data will become necessary. Not only will these data be important for the assessments
3170 that expand in scope, but as NOAA Fisheries progresses toward ecosystem-based fisheries management
3171 (EBFM), these data will be crucial for EBFM implementation as described in NOAA Fisheries' EBFM
3172 Roadmap.²⁴

3173 Fortunately, ecosystem and socioeconomic programs within NOAA Fisheries and its partners are actively
3174 collecting this information today. Additionally, ongoing work is being leveraged (e.g., stock assessment
3175 surveys that also collect ecosystem information) and many opportunities exist for further leveraging. For
3176 instance, fishery-independent data collection aboard NOAA ships and chartered vessels could be

²³ <https://www.st.nmfs.noaa.gov/advanced-technology/electronic-monitoring/index>

²⁴ <http://www.nmfs.noaa.gov/op/pds/documents/01/120/01-120-01.pdf>

3177 expanded at a relatively low cost to collect more interdisciplinary data for ecosystem research. Also,
3178 coordinated and standardized ocean observations, as achieved through international collaborations
3179 such as the Global Ocean Observing System²⁵ and their coordination of Essential Ocean Variables,
3180 facilitates access to ecosystem data that may be useful in stock assessments. However, as mentioned
3181 previously, an important consideration in expanding data collection efforts is ensuring staff capacity for
3182 processing data and for conducting research to understand the ecosystem processes (Section 9.2.4). This
3183 consideration may explain the lack of ecosystem and socioeconomic data to support full evaluations of
3184 these drivers in all stock assessments.

3185 Numerous socioeconomic and ecosystem factors must be considered under a holistic approach to
3186 managing living marine resources (Figure 8.1). Within an ecosystem, the key living and non-living
3187 features include information on food webs; diseases and parasites; oceanography (e.g., temperature,
3188 salinity, oxygen concentration, pH, and current dynamics); climate conditions; structural habitat; and
3189 toxins. Given the variety of factors, diverse and innovative approaches are needed to collect and
3190 characterize this information. Advanced sampling technologies, particularly from the following
3191 disciplines, will continue to enhance data collections: biotechnology (e.g., characterization of food webs
3192 using biosensors for sampling lipid, fatty acid, stable isotopes, genetics, and macroscopic analyses; and
3193 detection of diseases and parasites using genetic, macroscopic, physiological, and standard medical
3194 diagnostic analyses); remote sensing platforms and ocean observation systems (e.g., monitoring physical
3195 water conditions using satellites, autonomous vehicles, and standard oceanographic instrumentation);
3196 high-resolution and seasonal to decade-long climate models for forecasting climate conditions at scales
3197 relevant to most fishery management decisions; underwater sensor technologies (e.g., quantification
3198 and characterization of biological communities and their habitats using optics and sonar); and
3199 chromatography and other detection techniques for toxins.

3200 There is a basic need to collect socioeconomic data to understand and manage fisheries in consideration
3201 of their community-level importance as well as their economic contributions. However, the
3202 recommendation for increasing the collection of this information is made here in the context of the
3203 stock assessment process. In addition to modeling stock dynamics, assessments also model fishery
3204 dynamics. Because fisheries support recreation, food, and livelihoods, their dynamics are driven largely
3205 by socioeconomic decisions. Although innovation and technology may enable the improved collection of
3206 socioeconomic data, the higher priority is to expand the collection of information related to fishermen's
3207 decision processes, sales, revenue, value-added impacts, and jobs. These data are collected mainly
3208 through on-the-ground outreach. However, some of this information may be well suited for collection
3209 using EM/ER (Section 9.2.2).

3210 **9.2.4 Advanced sampling technologies**

²⁵ <http://goosocean.org/>

3211 The previous section provided recommendations for expanding the types of data being collected for
3212 stock assessment purposes. Although many of the recommendations are related to technological
3213 advancements, the technologies discussed in this section focus largely on methods for monitoring stock
3214 abundance. NOAA Fisheries has long recognized the importance of advanced sampling technologies for
3215 enhancing survey data collection, improving abundance estimates, and minimizing uncertainties in
3216 measurements and estimates. The research and development in advanced sampling technologies
3217 include testing and calibration of the sampling tools, improving the efficiency of data processing, and
3218 evaluating the feasibility of transitioning technologies into operations (Chapter 4). Technology
3219 investments should be guided by stock assessment priorities and address information gaps to improve
3220 stock and ecosystem assessments (e.g., Chapter 10). In addition, these investments should benefit
3221 NOAA's next generation infrastructure with more efficient survey operations and integrated ocean
3222 observation systems.

3223 For the research, development, and evaluation of advanced sampling technologies, NOAA will continue
3224 to rely on partnerships among academic institutions, industry, and other agencies. Promoting these
3225 partnerships with research and development of technology will be increasingly important, especially
3226 given that NOAA's limited pool of technology expertise will need to implement and sustain these
3227 technologies aboard its survey operations.

3228 Sensing technologies continue to be integrated into ship survey operations to achieve multidisciplinary
3229 objectives, and this area holds significant potential for improving stock assessments. In particular, these
3230 technologies provide opportunities for calibrating ongoing abundance surveys by directly observing the
3231 area sampled by traditional gear (e.g., trawls) and the number, size, and type of species available to that
3232 gear. A recent upgrade of the northeast scallop survey included an advanced optical imaging system,
3233 which was calibrated and has facilitated estimation of absolute, rather than relative, abundance indices.
3234 Thus, advanced technologies facilitate the estimation of absolute stock abundance and therefore may
3235 be used to address recommendations in Section 9.2.1. Another benefit of sensor technology is the
3236 ability to deploy sampling gear in areas that have been difficult to survey with traditional gear (e.g.,
3237 rocky and coral habitats). In most cases, data-limited stocks (e.g., fish groups associated with reef or
3238 rocky habitat) in federal fishery management plans lack data because of difficulties in sampling such
3239 habitats. Therefore, advanced sampling technologies offer exciting opportunities for improving the
3240 assessment and management of these important species.

3241 With the implementation of advanced technologies, larger volumes of data are typically collected. This is
3242 particularly true for acoustic and optical surveys. For example, the next generation of fisheries acoustic
3243 systems will collect four times more data. In addition, using stereo video systems to enhance visual
3244 surveys will also drastically increase data collection. Although these large data streams need to be
3245 stored, this concern is minor compared with the need for rapid access to processed data for analysis and
3246 visualization. One approach NOAA Fisheries has taken to address this issue is to collaborate with the
3247 computer vision technology industry to develop tools for automated image analysis. This technology

3248 continues to evolve rapidly; therefore, continued investments in processing efficiencies are critical and
3249 expected to be beneficial.

3250 Another promising, low-cost technique to explore for filling important stock assessment data gaps is
3251 environmental DNA (eDNA). This technology has typically been used to document the presence of a
3252 species in a given system by detecting the DNA of that species. However, more recently, eDNA has
3253 demonstrated potential for measuring abundance of a species under the theory that the concentration
3254 of a species' DNA in the environment is in proportion to the density of that species (Takahara et al.,
3255 2012). Given the simplicity of collecting water samples for later DNA analysis, it may be relatively cost-
3256 effective to collect this information on either new platforms or by leveraging ongoing fishing or survey
3257 operations.

3258 Wise investments in advanced sampling technologies must be guided by stock assessment priorities to
3259 resolve key information gaps. Unmanned platforms (e.g., aerial systems, moorings, gliders, and
3260 autonomous and remotely operated underwater vehicles) will become relatively low-cost options for
3261 deploying acoustic and optical technologies, especially when compared to the cost of building, running,
3262 and staffing a traditional research vessel. However, ships remain the key infrastructure for conducting
3263 surveys and deploying technologies that augment and improve survey coverage. As technologies are
3264 implemented, calibrations are required at various levels, ranging from sensor, inter-vessel, and sampling
3265 gear performance, to changes in survey designs that are improved with technologies. Continued
3266 investment in these platforms and their calibration is necessary for expanding the coverage of stock
3267 abundance surveys and improving the assessment and management of data-limited species. Overall,
3268 these technologies provide an opportunity among NOAA programs, academic institutions, and industry
3269 to build an integrated survey and ocean observation infrastructure for NOAA's next generation stock
3270 assessment enterprise.

3271 **9.2.5 Improving data management, processing, and delivery**

3272 As emphasized throughout this document, data collection systems play a critical role for the success and
3273 improvement of stock assessments. In 2013, NOAA Fisheries conducted a series of independent reviews
3274 of its data collection and management systems for stock assessments.²⁶ It became clear from these
3275 reviews that comprehensive improvements are warranted. Additionally, the Open Data Initiative²⁷
3276 formally calls on federal agencies, such as NOAA Fisheries, to offer public access to government
3277 information resources in a "computer readable" form. Thus, NOAA Fisheries is transitioning its data and
3278 information systems to be more secure, easier to access, and more readily understood by the public.
3279 These improvements offer opportunities, not only to address the Open Data Initiative, but also to
3280 improve the stock assessment process.
3281

²⁶ <http://www.st.nmfs.noaa.gov/science-program-review/>

²⁷ <https://www.data.gov/>

3282 Although the previous sections provide a vision for data types and collection techniques, this section
3283 specifically refers to data management in relation to stock assessment efficiency. As NOAA Fisheries
3284 creates data and information systems that comply with the Open Data Initiative, it is an opportune time
3285 to address data issues that lead to confusion and delay in the stock assessment process. For some
3286 assessments, analysts face challenges in obtaining all necessary data. These challenges arise because
3287 many sources of data are managed by individual programs and partners, data require varying degrees of
3288 processing before analysis, and the access and ability to process the data is limited. It is most efficient if
3289 stock assessment scientists can simply obtain all necessary data in the formats required as early as
3290 possible in the stock assessment process. There is a need to improve data management in NOAA
3291 Fisheries and with partner organizations that provide data to the stock assessment process (particularly
3292 within the networks used to compile fishery-dependent data). Stock assessments will become more
3293 streamlined, and in some cases, more accurate, by creating systems that are open and easily accessible,
3294 organized according to standard formats and data dictionaries, and that contain effective and
3295 automated error-checking and processing procedures to facilitate access to timely and accurate data.
3296 These technological and process-oriented improvements address objectives described in Chapter 10
3297 related to improving the timeliness, efficiency, and effectiveness of the stock assessment process.

3298 The development of streamlined systems for compiling and processing data (e.g. catch, abundance,
3299 composition) for assessment applications represents a first step toward improving assessment data
3300 delivery. For example, a web-based interface, such as the Alaska Fisheries Information Network²⁸
3301 (AKFIN) simplifies data processing steps and ensures greater transparency in how the data were
3302 compiled. More regional systems such as AKFIN are nonetheless needed. Features should provide the
3303 user with ways to easily search and compile the information (e.g., through construction of maps, tables,
3304 and diagnostic figures) while also allowing easy documentation of the steps that were taken in the
3305 preparation of assessment input data. In the interest of transparency, routine retracing of these steps
3306 should be made feasible, and to facilitate thorough evaluation, interfaces should be designed that
3307 encourage users to examine data closely for characteristics such as incorrect data points and differences
3308 due to alternative processing techniques. For example, the ability to easily examine fishery data by
3309 sector, season, and spatial distribution can help users evaluate the number of fisheries that should be
3310 explicitly modeled in an assessment (and allow for the easy creation of alternative configurations for
3311 testing the sensitivity of an assessment). For situations where data from fishery-independent surveys
3312 are available, analytical tools for processing such data collections can benefit from applications that use
3313 innovative statistical techniques, such as better accounting for spatial dynamics (see the discussion in
3314 Section 9.3 on software developments).

3315

3316

²⁸ <http://www.psmfc.org/program/alaska-fisheries-information-network-akfin>

3317

3318

3319

3320

Box 9.1. Summary of Data Collection and Processing Recommendations

3321

- Establish a national working group in NOAA Fisheries focused on data collection for stock assessments.
- Conduct a gap analysis for stock assessment survey coverage and intensity in each region to facilitate survey prioritization.
- Conduct research to estimate survey catchability and selectivity to facilitate estimation of absolute abundance for key stocks.
- Adjust surveys to track shifting species distributions and conduct studies to calibrate surveys where distributions have changed.
- Partner with the fishing industry to conduct low-cost monitoring as part of normal fishing operations to fill data gaps and/or subsample fishery catch rates according to a sampling design.
- Increase use of cost-effective electronic monitoring and reporting to improve fishery-dependent data collection.
- Enhance broad spectrum sampling of ecosystem and socioeconomic data using new and existing platforms and technologies.
- Expand use of advanced sampling technologies (acoustics, optics, eDNA, and unmanned platforms) for tracking stock abundance by calibrating surveys and sampling in “untrawlable” habitat.
- Provide centralized open access to updated and processed stock assessment data.
- Utilize standardized and understandable data dictionaries and formats.
- Where possible, establish automated quality control and data processing procedures.

3322

3323

3324

3325

3326

3327

3328

3329

3330

3331

3332

3333

3334

3335

9.3. Innovations in stock assessment modeling

3337

Analytical tools available for conducting stock assessments are more powerful and more efficient than ever. This innovation has facilitated the integration of large amounts of data from diverse sources, comprehensive characterizations of statistical uncertainty, and the evaluation of multiple hypotheses about stock and fishery dynamics within an assessment. The tools themselves cannot “fix” issues in the

3338

3339

3340

3341 data, but as tools develop, they contain enhanced functionality that allow for appropriate treatment of
3342 data and presentation of results and uncertainties. The recommendations in this section pertain mostly
3343 to technical advancements related to the functionality of analytical tools for stock assessments. These
3344 recommendations address many of the challenges raised in Chapter 5, offering a direction for improving
3345 stock assessment models. Some examples include new approaches for conducting data-limited
3346 assessments, promising statistical tools, and alternative strategies for evaluating risk in fishery
3347 management settings. The section concludes with a presentation of options for integrating ecosystem
3348 information into stock assessment models.

3349 **9.3.1 Improved software and advanced models**

3350 Advances in software have greatly facilitated application developments for fisheries stock assessments.
3351 The ability to develop open source software packages that focus on reproducibility of results and
3352 provide assistance with documenting those results has provided more time for assessment model
3353 developers and analysts to concentrate their efforts on prototyping and designing alternative models
3354 that account for a range of reasonable assumptions. This flexibility is important for providing an
3355 improved characterization of the true uncertainty surrounding assessment results (see Section 9.3.3).

3356 The software package that continues to form the foundation of the majority of NOAA Fisheries' stock
3357 assessments is Auto Differentiation Model Builder²⁹ (ADMB; Fournier et al., 2012). The main advantage
3358 of ADMB is its ability to efficiently run complex nonlinear models with many estimated parameters,
3359 which is how most modern stock assessment models are configured. NOAA Fisheries continues to be the
3360 primary funding source for ADMB, providing global leadership in assessment model support and
3361 development. Unless assessments migrate to another platform, it is important for the entire stock
3362 assessment enterprise that this support continues at a level sufficient for ADMB to be able to adapt to
3363 ongoing advancements in assessment science. For example, in 2016 the ADMB project embraced a
3364 European-developed project, Template Model Builder³⁰ (TMB), which offers a substantial increase in
3365 speed for certain classes of model structures. NOAA Fisheries' scientists are significantly engaged in both
3366 ADMB and TMB.

3367 Modern open source statistical programming languages such as R³¹ represent another significant
3368 advancement for stock assessments. These programming languages improve the efficiency and rigor by
3369 which assessment data are evaluated, alternative assessment scenarios are conducted, and results are
3370 assimilated and presented. These languages are relatively accessible to analysts without formal training
3371 in computer programming, but they provide users with access to powerful programming tools (including
3372 C++ and FORTRAN libraries) within a common interface. Also, given the open source nature and global
3373 popularity, users also have access to tested and reviewed software packages that allow the

²⁹ <http://admb-project.org/>

³⁰ <https://github.com/kaskr/adcomp/wiki>

³¹ <https://www.r-project.org/>

3374 implementation of common methods without the need to develop the methods from scratch. This
3375 access is particularly important for assessment analysts who are asked to evaluate numerous
3376 assumptions and configurations over shortened time periods, and NOAA Fisheries' scientists have
3377 contributed these software packages to the public domain (e.g., r4ss³²).

3378 A valuable opportunity available to assessment developers is the ability to coordinate with colleagues on
3379 projects via virtual and cloud-based platforms. This coordination has been enabled by modern online
3380 version control systems (e.g., git³³), which provide easy access to develop code, write documentation,
3381 and facilitate model testing and exchange of ideas and methods. Many assessment platforms have been
3382 developed by single authors or small teams in independent settings. However, the community-level
3383 development option makes it easy to access a broad range of expertise, resulting in enhanced
3384 functionality and more thorough testing. Overall, the software packages, diversity of knowledge, and
3385 collaborative opportunities available to assessment model developers have matured to a point where
3386 NOAA Fisheries can now take a more professional approach to the development of general assessment
3387 tools. The assessment model, Stock Synthesis (Methot and Wetzel, 2013) has already migrated into
3388 NOAA's Virtual Lab³⁴ where git capabilities allow access to NOAA and invited external developers. The
3389 recommended approach to tool development will be to start with professional software architecture
3390 and to create modular applications to facilitate the rapid incorporation of new features as needed. This
3391 approach is an important component of the next generation stock assessment framework, because it
3392 allows for standard models that improve efficiency and transparency, as well as easy expansion of
3393 models (including more holistic options) driven by needs identified through prioritization.

3394 The cutting edge of assessment model development lies in the ability to treat certain model
3395 components (e.g., natural mortality) not as fixed constants, but rather as factors that vary randomly
3396 over time, age, and/or space in a way that is informed by available data and constrained by an
3397 estimated statistical distribution. This technique has many names, including state-space models, random
3398 effects models, mixed-effects models, and hierarchical models, among others. The use of this statistical
3399 technique helps to address several challenges in the assessment process. In particular, the
3400 characterization of uncertainty may be improved by accounting for variation in the model structure (i.e.,
3401 process error). This approach relates to improved risk assessment (Section 9.3.3) as well as an ability to
3402 indirectly account for ecosystem and socioeconomic effects (Chapter 8 and Section 9.3.4). Even when
3403 there is not a clear understanding of the mechanisms that cause stock and fishery dynamics to drift over
3404 time, and when data are unavailable to model those mechanisms, allowing for a random but informed
3405 variation of a model component may sufficiently account for these external drivers in some cases.
3406 Although these techniques are not yet common in U.S. stock assessments, many European stocks are
3407 assessed using the State-space Assessment Model (SAM³⁵), which does allow for random effects. Recent

³² <https://cran.r-project.org/web/packages/r4ss/index.html>

³³ <https://git-scm.com/>

³⁴ <https://vlab.ncep.noaa.gov/group/stock-synthesis/home>

³⁵ <https://www.stockassessment.org/>

3408 development of TMB, which allows for efficient estimation of complex statistical models with numerous
3409 random effects, now opens the door to implementing this technique more broadly in stock assessments.
3410 It is recommended here that many stock assessments capitalize on this opportunity to better
3411 characterize changes in processes and better account for spatial dynamics.

3412 A specific technical challenge for modern assessment methods relates to “data weighting.” This term
3413 refers to the appropriate specification (or estimation) of variances associated with different data
3414 components. This term also includes how to elicit and apply prior information, particularly for data-
3415 limited situations, and how to specify process error variances where estimation is presently difficult or
3416 impractical. In general, data weighting requires some degree of subjectivity. However, recent
3417 developments to estimate variances of composition data hold some promise for objective approaches
3418 (e.g., Francis, 2014; Thorson, 2014). Tests for these approaches and how they may apply to data-limited
3419 situations require simulation testing (e.g., Deroba et al., 2014). Furthermore, approaches that augment
3420 information on a particular stock based on data from similar species and regions are a clear, cost-
3421 effective way forward (for example applications see Punt et al., 2011; Punt and Dorn, 2013;). As noted
3422 in Bentley (2014), models for management face the challenge to balance opposing risks of inappropriate
3423 management “action” due to assessment inaccuracy, and inappropriate management “inaction” due to
3424 assessment uncertainty.

3425 **9.3.2 Using multiple models to generate advice**

3426 Methods that combine results from multiple alternative models are generally referred to as “ensemble
3427 modeling.” This approach involves generating multiple projections of future system states using a range
3428 of assumptions about how to configure the assessment. Therefore, ensemble modeling has the
3429 potential to capture structural uncertainty in addition to the observation uncertainty that is typically
3430 quantified. This approach is widely used in climate modeling where uncertainty is reflected in the
3431 accuracy of the approximations to the well-known and accepted physical principles of climate and the
3432 inherent variability of the climate system. For the purposes of weather forecasts (e.g., predicting a
3433 hurricane track), model ensembles are created from a suite of models whose performance is updated
3434 (with precise data) at regular intervals and monitored to provide probability statements on near- and
3435 medium-term predictions. The past predictions of each model can be evaluated relative to known storm
3436 tracks and used to weight its contribution to the ensemble for future predictions.

3437 Fish stocks and fishery management operate at a slower pace than weather predictions. The challenges
3438 with fisheries, however, are that the observations are rarely precise; many drivers affecting fish stocks
3439 (other than fishing) typically go unobserved (e.g., the impact of tides, food availability, predation, and so
3440 on); and there is less opportunity for validating past predictions (e.g., hurricane forecasts can be
3441 compared with the actual hurricane track, but the true abundance of a fish stock is seldom known). In
3442 these settings, more formal methods of combining model alternatives, such as Bayesian Model
3443 Averaging, (e.g., Buckland et al., 1997; Durban et al., 2005; Hoeting et al., 1999; Kass and Raftery, 1995;
3444 Raftery et al., 2005; Chimielechi and Raftery, 2011) or bootstrapping approaches (Stewart and Martell,

2015) can be applied. Critical simulation testing has shown that model averaging approaches outperformed methods that generated advice based on a “best” model (Wilberg and Bence, 2008). It is recommended that stock assessments capitalize on these advances in ensemble modeling to generate management advice with more complete characterizations of uncertainty. However, it is important to stress that each model included in the final ensemble should be considered plausible according to the assessment analysts and reviewers (at least). Further, all models should be well documented and contributed early enough in the assessment to be included in the assessment review process. Thus, every model in an ensemble should have consistent levels of review and transparency.

9.3.3 Risk assessment for fisheries management decisions

The evaluation of risk and accounting for uncertainty are clear requirements for setting annual catch limits (ACLs) as specified in the MSA (e.g., to provide a sufficiently low chance of overfishing while maximizing catch; Methot et al., 2014). These actions involve estimating scientific uncertainty (Chapter 5) and evaluating management uncertainty (Patrick et al., 2013). Approaches are outlined later to evaluate uncertainty in the implementation of management actions with a goal of satisfying this and other objectives for fishery managers and stakeholders. Such methods should be shown to be robust to management objectives (i.e., low probability of leading to an overfished state while optimizing yield). For management purposes, a key for new analytical tools will be to balance research models and operational management tools that are used as a basis for setting catch limits and determining status.

The field of decision theory provides useful analytical methods for finding optimal solutions in the assessment of risk. However, these approaches suffer from a lack of transparency, and simpler methods are often preferred by fishery managers. An example where a risk-averse, decision-theoretic approach was replaced by a more straightforward method has been adopted for certain (“Tier 1”) stocks managed under the Bering Sea/Aleutian Islands Groundfish Fishery Management Plan (Amendment 56). In this example, the risk-averse approach to developing a catch recommendation (i.e., Acceptable Biological Catch, ABC) was found to be equal to an approach that simply used a certain type of averaging (i.e., the harmonic mean) of the estimate of the overfishing limit (F_{MSY}). An appealing characteristic of this approach is that the harmonic mean is some percent reduction from F_{MSY} , and when uncertainty in the assessment (particularly around F_{MSY}) is high, the recommended catch is decreased as one might expect in a precautionary harvest control rule. This approach has proven useful for accounting for scientific uncertainty, but fishery managers must also consider other factors, such as management uncertainty and socioeconomic factors, when optimizing yield.

Another management measure that attempts to account for assessment uncertainty related to risk of exceeding an overfishing limit is known as the P* approach (Shertzer et al., 2008). This method relates the probability that a projected future catch would exceed the overfishing (F_{MSY}) level and allows the policy makers to establish the level of risk related to a catch limit selection. For example, if P* was set to 0.4, then this would represent a 40% chance that the corresponding catch limit would exceed the true overfishing limit. Although effective at addressing specific sources of uncertainty, the P* and decision-

3482 theoretic approaches do not account for considerations related to interactions among fisheries and
3483 multiple species within an ecosystem.

3484 An important advancement for evaluating risk in fishery management is the growing application of
3485 simulation-tested management strategy evaluations (MSEs; Butterworth et al., 1996; Butterworth, 2007;
3486 Punt et al., 2014). A distinct advantage of this decision analysis tool is that models used for developing
3487 catch recommendations (i.e., the actual management strategies or control rules) are designed to be
3488 transparent and relatively simple. Also, the approach can incorporate any number of considerations,
3489 including biological, ecosystem, and socioeconomic factors. This aligns well with the NS1 Guidelines,
3490 which suggest that a council can consider the socioeconomic and ecological tradeoffs between being
3491 more or less risk averse. Further, by conducting simulation testing, there is a certain amount of
3492 confidence in the results. In a well-designed MSE, stakeholders are engaged throughout the process to
3493 ensure that the performance metrics that directly relate to management objectives are easy to
3494 understand (Punt et al., 2014). The challenges for this approach include developing defensible operating
3495 model configurations, particularly for testing control rules in data-limited situations. Borrowing from
3496 related species and stocks from other areas could help establish plausible estimates for biological
3497 parameters (e.g., Smith et al., 2015).

3498 The MSE approach benefits from using disparate sources of information and models (including
3499 multispecies and ecosystem considerations) to devise plausible realities for testing management
3500 options. Looking forward, recent developments in statistical programming languages such as R (Section
3501 9.3.1) have made it easier for stakeholders to participate in MSEs. For instance, by having access to tools
3502 that are designed to work within a specific assessment framework, such as the `ss3sim`³⁶ package for
3503 Stock Synthesis (Methot and Wetzel, 2013), more time can be spent on developing objectives and
3504 performance metrics with stakeholders than on coding simulation analyses. Other R packages specialize
3505 in user-friendly interfaces to evaluate policy choices given uncertain states of nature, such as `mseR`
3506 (Kronlund et al., 2012) and the MSE tool developed for the International Pacific Halibut Commission.³⁷ It
3507 is recommended here that NOAA Fisheries continues to invest in the development of MSE tools and the
3508 resources necessary for development and expansion of MSEs to inform management decisions in the
3509 face of uncertainty.

3510 **9.3.4 Holistic stock assessment models**

3511 Ecosystem information is beginning to form a more integral part of modern stock assessments. Effective
3512 marine conservation and management requires an understanding of how ecosystem drivers (e.g.,
3513 temperature changes) can affect assessment results (in particular, biological reference points). As these
3514 broader applications become a more integral part of the stock assessment process, any number of
3515 management decisions can account for this information, including catch levels. Stock-specific ecosystem

³⁶ <https://github.com/ss3sim/ss3sim>

³⁷ <http://shiny.iphc.int/sample-apps/mseapp/>

3516 considerations within an assessment can help prioritize factors most likely to affect processes related to
3517 the stock. In addition, these considerations can provide further specifics on future productivity and
3518 potential management actions that may be needed (e.g., Shotwell et al., 2014).

3519 Chapter 8 provided a full discussion of holistic approaches to stock assessments that consider ecosystem
3520 and socioeconomic factors. Most current stock assessment models can incorporate many of these
3521 factors today, but there remains a need for research and development. With mixed-stock fisheries and
3522 climate change forcing systems into unobserved states with consequences for fisheries (e.g., Ianelli et
3523 al., 2011; Meuter et al., 2011; Holsman et al., 2016), it is imperative that next generation stock
3524 assessment models have straightforward options for accounting for ecosystem and/or socioeconomic
3525 factors, and that the effects of these additional factors be easily understood and tested. Example model
3526 features that would facilitate more holistic assessments include capabilities for spatial structure and
3527 connectivity, options to incorporate multispecies dynamics, state-space implementations that allow
3528 efficient models with random change and variability, the ability to apply multiple model
3529 configurations/types, and standard diagnostic and reporting features for rapid dissemination of results.
3530 The recommendation here to develop assessment tools with these capabilities could result in more
3531 efficient, but also more comprehensive (holistic), stock assessment models.

3532 **9.3.5 Expanding and improving process studies**

3533 Many of the recommendations provided in this chapter are challenging to implement without a more
3534 complete understanding of key processes. For instance, in order to expand the scope of a stock
3535 assessment to include ecosystem and socioeconomic factors, it is not only important to collect the
3536 necessary data (Section 9.2.3) and to have assessment tools capable of incorporating those data
3537 (Section 9.3.4), it is also necessary to understand the main processes that drive stock and fishery
3538 dynamics. These process studies will provide guidance on how to configure expanded models. This
3539 research is also useful in helping to select plausible models for ensembles (Section 9.3.2) and to design
3540 and implement MSEs (Section 9.3.3). Thus, process research has an important role in improving the
3541 basis on which models of fish population dynamics and ecosystem dynamics are built. It is
3542 recommended here that NOAA continue to invest in these efforts and, in particular, that these
3543 investments be guided by stock assessment priorities (Chapter 10). Key areas for process studies that
3544 would address stock assessment priorities include the following research areas:

- 3545 • Habitat and environmental factors affecting the distribution of fish, fisheries, and the design of
3546 sampling programs
- 3547 • Factors constraining the physiology of fish in a changing environment
- 3548 • Flow of energy through marine food webs
- 3549 • Connection between changes in the marine environment and fluctuations in birth and growth
3550 rates of young fish

3552 **9.4. Conclusions**

3553 Although stock assessment science has benefited from numerous advancements during the past
3554 century, continued research and development is still required. A series of research initiatives within
3555 NOAA Fisheries allow federal researchers to develop projects that specifically tackle these objectives.
3556 These nationally run programs fund priority projects across the regions that improve stock assessments.

3557 Another path for improving assessments is through coordinated workshops and symposia that
3558 specifically address theories, estimators, and assumptions within particular aspects of stock assessment.
3559 These workshops provide the opportunity to synthesize current research and develop guidelines and
3560 best practices; examples include NOAA Fisheries' National Stock Assessment Workshops and the
3561 workshops being organized by the Center for the Advancement of Population Assessment
3562 Methodology.³⁸ The next generation stock assessment framework described in this document is
3563 attainable given the current state of the science, ongoing prioritized investments in research, and
3564 opportunities to collaborate broadly throughout the stock assessment community.

Box 9.2. Assessment Modeling Recommendations

- Utilize advancements in statistical techniques, such as state-space, geo-statistics, sample weighting, auto-correlated processes, and so on.
- Provide a more complete characterization of uncertainty and utilize ensemble modeling and decision analysis tools to convey structural uncertainty and inform fishery management decisions.
- Improve professionalism of model development (professional architecture, thorough testing and publication of test results, thorough documentation and user guides, community development, and cloud-based computing).
- Expand the scope of assessment models where appropriate to include spatial dynamics, multispecies and ecosystem processes, and/or socioeconomics.
- Rely on stock assessment priorities to guide investments in innovative science and technology and the resources necessary to implement these advancements.

References

3576
3577 Adams, C. F., T. J. Miller, J. P. Manderson, D. E. Richardson, and B. E. Smith. 2015. Butterfish 2014 stock
3578 assessment. U.S. Dept. Commer., Northeast Fish. Sci. Cent. Ref. Doc. 15-06, 110 p.
3579 <https://doi.org/10.7289/V5WM1BCT>

³⁸ <http://www.capamresearch.org/>

- 3580 Bentley, N. 2014. Data and time poverty in fisheries estimation: potential approaches and solutions. ICES
3581 J. Mar. Sci. 72:186–193. <https://doi.org/10.1093/icesjms/fsu023>
- 3582 Brodziak, J., and C. M. Legault. 2005. Model averaging to estimate rebuilding targets for overfished
3583 stocks. Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 62:544–562. <https://doi.org/10.1139/f04-199>
- 3584 Brodziak, J., and K. Piner. 2010. Model averaging and probable status of North Pacific striped marlin,
3585 *Tetrapturus audax*. C. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 67:793–805. <https://doi.org/10.1139/F10-029>
- 3586 Buckland, S. T., K. P. Burnham, and N. H. Augustin. 1997. Model selection: an integral part of inference.
3587 Biometrics 53:603–618. <https://doi.org/10.2307/2533961>
- 3588 Burnham, K. P., and D. R. Anderson. 1998. Model selection and multimodel inference: a practical
3589 information theoretic approach, 353 p. Springer Verlag, NY.
- 3590 Butterworth, D. S. 2007. Why a management procedure approach? Some positives and negatives. ICES J.
3591 Mar. Sci. 64:613–617. <https://doi.org/10.1093/icesjms/fsm003>
- 3592 Butterworth, D. S., A. E. Punt, and A. D. M. Smith. 1996. On plausible hypotheses and their weighting,
3593 with implications for selection between variants of the revised management procedure. Forty-Sixth
3594 Rep. Int. Whaling Comm., p. 637–640.
- 3595 Chimielechi, R. M., and A. E. Raftery. 2011. Probabilistic visibility forecasting using Bayesian model
3596 averaging. Mon. Weather Rev. 139:1626–1636. <https://doi.org/10.1175/2010MWR3516.1>
- 3597 Deroba, J. J., D. S. Butterworth, R. D. Methot Jr., J. A. A. De Oliveira, C. Fernandez, A. Nielsen, S. X.
3598 Cadrin, M. Dickey-Collas, C. M. Legault, J. Ianelli, J. L. Valero, C. L. Needle, J. M. O'Malley, Y-J. Chang,
3599 G. G. Thompson, C. Canales, D. P. Swain, D. C. M. Miller, N. T. Hintzen, M. Bertignac, L. Ibaibarriaga,
3600 A. Silva, A. Murta, L. T. Kell, C. L. de Moor, A. M. Parma, C. M. Dichmont, V. R. Restrepo, Y. Ye, E.
3601 Jardim, P. D. Spencer, D. H. Hanselman, J. Blaylock, M. Mood, and P.-J. F. Hulson. 2015. Simulation
3602 testing the robustness of stock assessment models to error: some results from the ICES strategic
3603 initiative on stock assessment methods. ICES J. Mar. Sci. 72:19–30.
3604 <https://doi.org/10.1093/icesjms/fst237>
- 3605 Fournier, D. A., H. J. Skaug, J. Ancheta, J. Ianelli, A. Magnusson, M. N. Maunder, A. Nielsen, and J. Sibert.
3606 2012. AD Model Builder: using automatic differentiation for statistical inference of highly
3607 parameterized complex nonlinear models. Optim. Methods Softw. 27:233–249.
3608 <https://doi.org/10.1080/10556788.2011.597854>
- 3609 Francis, R. I. C. C. 2014. Replacing the multinomial in stock assessment models: a first step. Fish. Res.
3610 151:70–84. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.fishres.2013.12.015>
- 3611 Holsman, K. K., J. Ianelli, K. Aydin, A. E. Punt, and E. A. Moffitt. 2016. A comparison of fisheries biological
3612 reference points estimated from temperature-specific multi-species and single-species climate-

- 3613 enhanced stock assessment models. *Deep-Sea Res. Part II: Topical Stud. Oceanogr.* 134:360–378.
3614 <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.dsr2.2015.08.001>
- 3615 Kronlund, A. R., S. P. Cox, and J. S. Cleary. 2012. Management strategy evaluation in R (mseR): user's
3616 guide and simulation exercises. *Can. Tech. Rep. Fish. Aquat. Sci.* 3001, 52 p.
- 3617 Maunder, M. N., P. R. Crone, J. L. Valero, and B. X. Semmens. 2014. Selectivity: theory, estimation, and
3618 application in fishery stock assessment models. *Fish. Res.* 158:1–4.
3619 <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.fishres.2014.03.017>
- 3620 Methot, R. D. Jr. 2009. Stock assessment: operational models in support of fisheries management. *In*
3621 *The future of fishery science in North America* (R. J. Beamish and B. J. Rothschild, eds.), p. 137–165.
3622 Springer, NY.
- 3623 Methot, R. D. Jr., G. R. Tromble, D. M. Lambert, and K. E. Greene. 2014. Implementing a science-based
3624 system for preventing overfishing and guiding sustainable fisheries in the United States. *ICES J. Mar.*
3625 *Sci.* 71:183–194. <https://doi.org/10.1093/icesjms/fst119>
- 3626 Methot, R. D. Jr., and C. R. Wetzel. 2013. Stock synthesis: a biological and statistical framework for fish
3627 stock assessment and fishery management. *Fish. Res.* 142:86–99.
3628 <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.fishres.2012.10.012>
- 3629 Patrick, W. S., W. N. Morrison, M. Nelson, and R. L. González Marrero. 2013. Factors affecting
3630 management uncertainty in U.S. fisheries and methodological solutions. *Ocean Coast. Manage.*
3631 71:64–72. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ocecoaman.2012.11.002>
- 3632 Punt, A. E., D. C. Smith, and A. D. M. Smith. 2011. Among-stock comparisons for improving stock
3633 assessments of data-poor stocks: the “Robin Hood” approach. *ICES J. Mar. Sci.* 68:972–981.
3634 <https://doi.org/10.1093/icesjms/fsr039>
- 3635 Punt, A. E., and M. Dorn. 2014. Comparisons of meta-analytic methods for deriving a probability
3636 distribution for the steepness of the stock–recruitment relationship. *Fish. Res.* 149:43–54.
3637 <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.fishres.2013.09.015>
- 3638 Ralston, S., A. E. Punt, and O. S. Hamel, J. D. DeVore, and R. J. Conser. 2011. A meta-analytic approach to
3639 quantifying scientific uncertainty in stock assessments. *Fish. Bull.* 109:217–231.
- 3640 Shertzer, K. W., M. H. Prager, and E. H. Williams. 2008. A probability-based approach to setting annual
3641 catch levels. *Fish. Bull.* 106:225–232.
- 3642 Shotwell, S. K., D. H. Hanselman, S. Zador, and K. Aydin. 2014. Proposed framework for stock-specific
3643 ecosystem considerations (SEC) in Alaskan groundfish fishery management plans. September Plan
3644 Team Report, 25 p. [Available at

- 3645 [http://www.afsc.noaa.gov/refm/stocks/plan_team/2014/Sept/Stock-](http://www.afsc.noaa.gov/refm/stocks/plan_team/2014/Sept/Stock-Specific_Ecosystem_Considerations_Sept-2014.pdf)
3646 [Specific_Ecosystem_Considerations_Sept-2014.pdf.](http://www.afsc.noaa.gov/refm/stocks/plan_team/2014/Sept/Stock-Specific_Ecosystem_Considerations_Sept-2014.pdf)]
- 3647 Shotwell, S. K., D. H. Hanselman, and I. M. Belkin. 2014. Toward biophysical synergy: investigating
3648 advection along the Polar Front to identify factors influencing Alaska sablefish recruitment.
3649 Deep-Sea Res. Part II: Topical Stud. Oceanogr. 107:40–53.
3650 <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.dsr2.2012.08.024>
- 3651 Stewart, I. J., and S. J. D. Martell. 2015. Reconciling stock assessment paradigms to better inform
3652 fisheries management. ICES J. Mar. Sci. 72:2187–2196. <https://doi.org/10.1093/icesjms/fsv061>
- 3653 Takahara, T., T. Minamoto, H. Yamanaka, H. Doi, and Z. Kawabata. 2012. Estimation of fish biomass
3654 using environmental DNA. PLOS ONE 7(4): e35868. <https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0035868>
- 3655 Thorson, J. T., A. C. Hicks, and R. D. Methot. 2014. Random effect estimation of time-varying factors in
3656 Stock Synthesis. ICES J. Mar. Sci. 72:178–185. <https://doi.org/10.1093/icesjms/fst211>
- 3657 Thorson, J. T. 2014. Standardizing compositional data for stock assessment. ICES J. Mar. Sci. 71:1117–
3658 1128. <https://doi.org/10.1093/icesjms/fst224>
- 3659 Thorson, J. T., I. G. Taylor, I. J. Stewart, and A. E. Punt. 2014. Rigorous meta-analysis of life history
3660 correlations by simultaneously analyzing multiple population dynamics models. Ecol. Applications
3661 24:315–326. <https://doi.org/10.1890/12-1803.1>
- 3662 Thorson, J., C. Minto, C. V. Minto-Vera, K. M. Kleisner, and C. Longo. 2013. A new role for effort
3663 dynamics in the theory of harvested populations and data-poor stock assessment. Can. J. Fish.
3664 Aquat. Sci. 70: 1829–1844. <https://doi.org/10.1139/cjfas-2013-0280>
- 3665 Thorson, J. T., J. M. Cope, K. M. Kleisner, J. F. Samhuri, A. O. Shelton, E. J. Ward. 2015. Giants' shoulders
3666 15 years later: lessons, challenges, and guidelines in fisheries meta-analysis. Fish Fish. 16(2): 342–
3667 361. <https://doi.org/10.1111/faf.12061>
- 3668 Tyrrell, M. C., J. S. Link, and H. Moustahfid. 2011. The importance of including predation in fish
3669 population models: implications for biological reference points. Fish. Res. 108:1–8.
3670 <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.fishres.2010.12.025>
- 3671

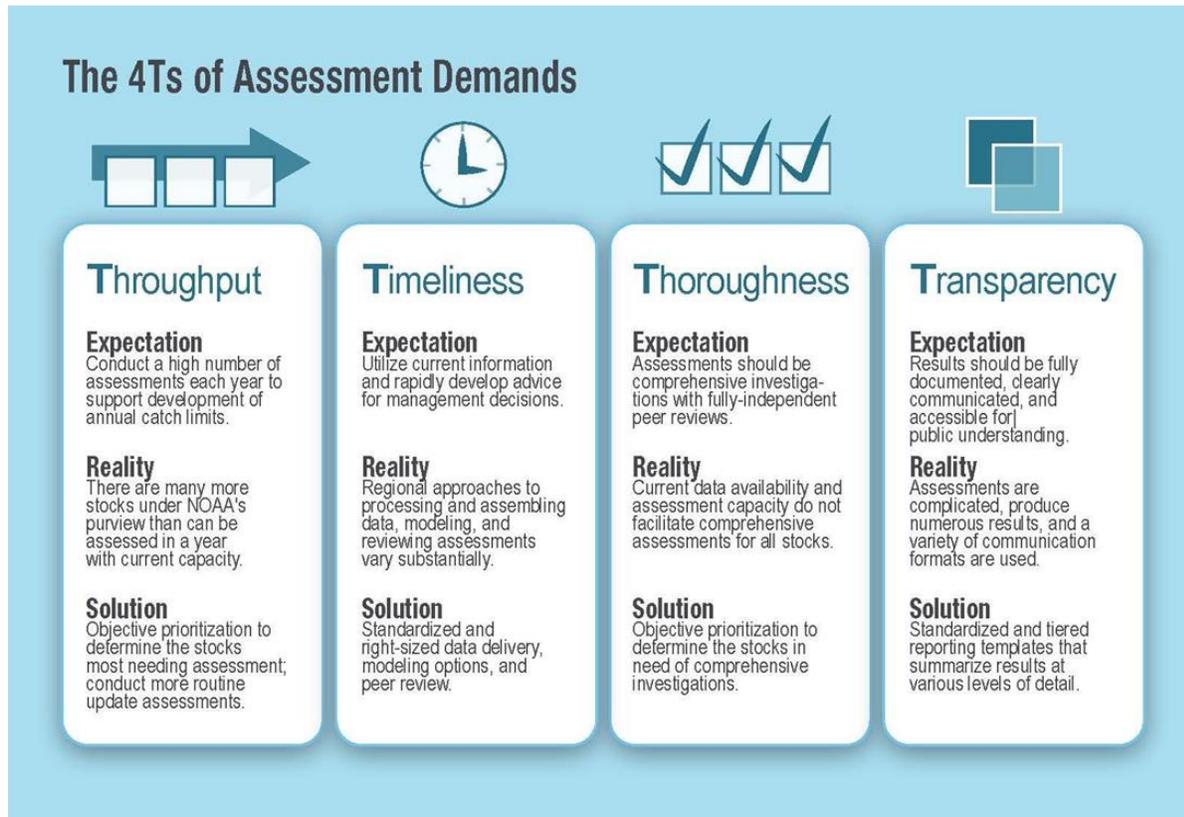
3672 **Chapter 10—An Efficient and Effective Stock Assessment** 3673 **Enterprise**

3674 **Chapter highlights:**

- 3675 • **The demand for increasing the quantity and quality of stock assessments has overloaded**
3676 **NOAA's stock assessment enterprise.**
- 3677 • **The completion rate of stock assessments is affected by varying requirements regarding the**
3678 **complexity of data sources, and how timely, thorough, and transparent assessments need to**
3679 **be to support effective management.**
- 3680 • **A national method for categorizing and prioritizing stock assessments is proposed to balance**
3681 **stock-specific needs, better use assessment resources, and identify gaps in NOAA's stock**
3682 **assessment enterprise.**
- 3683 • **Stock assessments should use more standardized processes regarding data preparation and**
3684 **delivery, assessment modeling, peer review, and communication.**
- 3685 • **Research is necessary to continue improving stock assessments, and the standardized**
3686 **operational process must be adaptable to incorporate advancements.**

3687 **10.1. Introduction**

3688 NOAA Fisheries' national stock assessment enterprise consists of several regional assessment programs
3689 that provide scientific advice to regional fishery management organizations (Chapter 3). Overall, this
3690 federal fishery management system operates in accordance with the MSA; however, the regional
3691 assessment programs and management organizations have developed independently over time. Thus,
3692 the processes by which MSA mandates are addressed can vary by region. Although the science–
3693 management interface has successfully achieved its goals for federal fisheries (Chapter 2), the demands
3694 and challenges surrounding the provision of best scientific information are substantial, conflicting, and
3695 broadly applicable. These issues can be classified according to the “4Ts” (Figure 10.1).
3696



3697

3698

Figure 10.1. The major demands and challenges facing NOAA Fisheries' stock assessment enterprise summarized by 4Ts (throughput, timeliness, thoroughness, and transparency).

3699

3700

3701

3702

3703

3704

3705

3706

3707

3708

3709

3710

3711

3712

3713

3714

3715

3716

3717

There are unrealistic expectations surrounding the 4Ts and it is not possible to simultaneously achieve high grades for each T. Figure 10.1 summarizes expectations and realities for the current stock assessment enterprise while also offering solutions to better meet expectations. These solutions do not intend to meet all expectations, but rather offer a balanced approach that manages expectations and suggests improvements where feasible. Thus, in this chapter, the range of improvements provided will achieve a more efficient and effective stock assessment process.

Nationally, there are many more federally managed fish stocks than can be assessed in a single year with NOAA Fisheries' current stock assessment capacity. The annual stock assessment demand in a given region typically exceeds the number of assessments that NOAA scientists can complete. However, annual assessments may be unnecessary for stocks that are not highly valued commercially, recreationally, or for other reasons. Also, stocks that do not exhibit substantial fluctuations in abundance from year to year may not require annual assessments. Because it is unnecessary to revise catch recommendations for certain stocks every year, and because NOAA Fisheries has limited stock assessment capacity, it is essential to determine which stocks are most in need of assessment. For high-priority stocks, it is also important to set the frequency at which assessments should be conducted in following years, and determine how comprehensive each assessment should be (i.e., the key data

3718 sources that should be used to calibrate the assessment as well as the nature of peer review that should
3719 occur). This chapter describes an objective national approach for establishing an assessment portfolio
3720 and offers suggestions for developing more efficient regional assessment processes.

3721
3722 This portfolio approach is fundamental to maximizing available stock assessment resources, guiding
3723 future investments, and achieving sustainable fisheries and resilient communities to the maximum
3724 extent possible. The main components of the portfolio approach include the following:

- 3725
- 3726 1. Classifying the stock assessments conducted by NOAA Fisheries
 - 3727 2. Establishing stock-specific targets for assessment frequency and the level (types of data used) of
3728 each assessment
 - 3729 3. Developing annual prioritized lists of stocks to assess in each region
 - 3730 4. Conducting gap analyses that compare classified assessments against their target levels
 - 3731 5. Using the resource assessment to right-size the stock assessment enterprise and seek funding as
3732 needed

3733
3734 A similar approach to strategic planning was introduced in the 2001 Stock Assessment Improvement
3735 Plan (Mace et al., 2001), which included an assessment classification system and strategic guidance
3736 outlined by the Three Tiers of Assessment Excellence (Chapter 2). Overall, this system provided guidance
3737 and justification for expanding and improving the stock assessment program. However, with the
3738 increasing demand for stock assessments, and the evolution of legal mandates, scientific knowledge and
3739 capability, and assessment processes, it is clear that a new portfolio approach is needed. In the following
3740 sections, we describe each of the three components of this new approach with reference to the existing
3741 system.

3742

3743 **10.2. Classifying stock assessments**

3744 Not all stock assessments are created equal. In Chapter 1, stock assessments were defined as being a
3745 process that results in a product. However, both the process and the product vary across the United
3746 States. See Chapter 6 for a description of the various regional assessment review processes (Table 6.1),
3747 and Chapter 5 for the range of stock assessment modeling approaches and their data requirements
3748 (Table 5.1). Thus, the type of product produced and degree of effort required for each assessment varies
3749 substantially. Further, the fishery management process may rely on analyses to support decisions, such
3750 as establishing annual catch limits, which use assessment science but do not assess the status of the
3751 stock and therefore are technically not stock assessments. For example, one approach to adapting catch
3752 regulations without conducting a full stock assessment is to rely on estimates from a previous
3753 assessment to forecast stock abundance and catch recommendations using updated catch data. These
3754 approaches are very useful analyses that support management between more complete stock
3755 assessments; however, they should not be considered stock assessments. Additionally, stock assessment
3756 research is conducted outside the operational assessment process to improve stock assessment

3757 methods. This work can be just as involved (if not more) than an operational assessment, but is not
3758 immediately used to provide management advice.

3759 To offer a consistent language on the various types of assessment-related analyses conducted by NOAA
3760 Fisheries, the following general categories are recommended:

- 3761 • **Research stock assessment**—development or revision of a stock assessment data type or
3762 method, typically subjected to the regional assessment review process. If the activity both
3763 produces a substantial revision to the assessment method and applies that method to produce
3764 management advice, then the activity is labelled as both a research assessment and an
3765 operational assessment (next category).
- 3766 • **Operational stock assessment (or “stock assessment”)**—analyses conducted to provide
3767 scientific advice to fishery managers with particular focus on determining stock status and
3768 recommending catch limits. These are the predominant assessment activities and include
3769 assessments using any of the methods described in Table 5.1, updated with the most recent
3770 data. Within the range of operational assessments will be first time applications of previously
3771 researched methods (“new” or “benchmark” assessments); applications with updated data
3772 streams and minor revisions to methods within the scope of previously researched themes; and
3773 applications that simply update the model with the most recent data. However, if only catch
3774 data are updated then the activity falls into the next category.
- 3775 • **Stock monitoring update**—methods used to provide stock-level advice to fishery managers
3776 between stocks assessments. These analyses include the methods described in Table 5.1, but
3777 only when they are updated using the most recent catch information to develop new catch
3778 advice. These are sometimes called partial updates. Because there are no changes in the
3779 methods or data series in stock monitoring updates, just updated catch data, the conduct and
3780 review of these analyses should be very routine and intense scrutiny is not warranted.

3781 Because a major focus of this plan is to set priorities for conducting assessments at frequencies and
3782 levels that are most appropriate for each stock, there is a need to establish a consistent approach to
3783 tracking and classifying assessments (i.e., everything captured in the “operational stock assessment”
3784 category). A stock assessment classification system was described in the 2001 SAIP (Mace et al., 2001).
3785 This system is currently used by NOAA Fisheries to classify individual assessments according to five
3786 categories, three of which capture the input data used in each assessment, and two for describing the
3787 assessment approach. The input data are categorized according to catch, abundance, and life history
3788 data, and the assessment approach is described in terms of the modeling technique used and frequency
3789 at which the stock is assessed. Overall, this system has proven useful for tracking stock assessments,
3790 evaluating assessment capacity, and addressing program gaps. For instance, as the preference to
3791 incorporate ecosystem dynamics into the assessment process has continued to increase, the
3792 classification system has been used to summarize which stocks already include such information (Box
3793 5.1).

3794 However, the current assessment classification system has limitations. The level of detail captured in the
 3795 categories is not sufficient to fully summarize assessments. Model configurations are largely driven by
 3796 the available input data, so an expansion of the original data categories is warranted. Also, the original
 3797 assessment model category blends modelling approaches and data inputs. For example, the highest
 3798 level in this category refers to a model that incorporates ecosystem, environmental, spatial, and/or
 3799 seasonal information. However, these types of data can be included using many assessment techniques
 3800 from simple to comprehensive.

3801
 3802 A new Stock Assessment Classification System is proposed and summarized in Table 10.1. This system
 3803 includes the high-level model categorization described in Chapter 5 (Table 5.1), tracks the age of the
 3804 assessments, and expands the categorization of available input data. Appendix A provides a detailed
 3805 description of the levels of each category in Table 10.1.

3806
 3807 **Table 10.1. NOAA Fisheries' Stock Assessment Classification System.** Seven attributes will be used to
 3808 classify individual stock assessments. Quantitative levels are defined for input data attributes to support
 3809 gap analyses.
 3810

	Attribute	Level
Assessment Application	Model Category	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Data-Limited • Index-Based • Aggregate Biomass Dynamics • Virtual Population Analysis • Statistical Catch-at-Length • Statistical Catch-at-Age
	Age	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Years since assessment conducted
Input Data	Catch	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 0. None 1. Major gaps preclude use 2. Major gaps in some sector(s) 3. Minor gaps across sectors 4. Minor gaps in some sector(s) 5. Near complete knowledge
	Size/Age Composition	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 0. None 1. Major gaps preclude use 2. Support data-limited only 3. Gaps, but supports age-structured assessment 4. Support fishery composition 5. Very complete
	Abundance	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 0. None

	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Uncertain or expert opinion 2. Standardized fishery-dependent 3. Limited fishery-independent 4. Comprehensive fishery-independent 5. Absolute abundance
Life History	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 0. None 1. Proxy-based 2. Empirical and proxy-based 3. Mostly empirical estimates 4. Track changes over time 5. Comprehensive over time and space
Ecosystem Linkage	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 0. None 1. Informative or used to process input data 2. Random variation, not mechanistic 3. Direct linkage(s) 4. Linkage(s) informed by process studies 5. Fully coupled

3811
3812
3813
3814
3815
3816
3817
3818

Overall, the Stock Assessment Classification System will improve national tracking of NOAA Fisheries' stock assessments and will provide a clear picture of the data available for each assessment. Further, the new categories specific to ecosystem linkages and size and age data will provide a more comprehensive understanding of how these key aspects of fish stock dynamics are being incorporated into stock assessments.

3819 **10.3. Prioritizing stock assessments**

3820 Historically, fish stock assessment prioritization has been conducted following independent regional
3821 processes. Each of the eight Regional Fishery Management Councils, in conjunction with their
3822 corresponding NOAA Fisheries science centers and regional offices, establish stock assessment
3823 schedules for the stocks under their management purview. These organizations utilize independent
3824 processes to identify and prioritize stocks in need of assessment. For instance, essentially all stocks
3825 managed by the North Pacific Fishery Management Council are assessed annually or biennially. By
3826 contrast, due to limited data availability, assessments are infrequent or yet to be conducted on stocks
3827 managed by the Caribbean Fishery Management Council. Within these extremes, most regional
3828 processes are informed by a multitude of factors when selecting the stocks to be assessed in a given
3829 year. Additionally, NOAA Fisheries supports and conducts assessments of stocks managed by state,

3830 interstate, or international organizations. In many cases, the assessment schedules for these stocks are
3831 established by the partner agencies.

3832
3833 Given that the socioeconomics, fishery dynamics, and species harvested are unique for each region,
3834 regional processes must determine assessment schedules. However, using a range of independent
3835 approaches among the regions is challenging for stakeholders that need to understand why certain
3836 assessments are conducted in a given year. If each region follows a unique protocol, it is difficult to track
3837 how assessment schedules are determined. This limits NOAA Fisheries' ability to evaluate stock
3838 assessment capacity from a national perspective, because the overall demand for stock assessments can
3839 be unpredictable when various approaches to scheduling are used. For federally managed stocks, annual
3840 catch limits are a required component of fishery management plans. Yet, NOAA Fisheries' current stock
3841 assessment capacity is not sufficient to support assessments of all federally managed stocks each year.
3842 For stocks that are relatively stable over time, it may be unnecessary to conduct annual stock
3843 assessments; however, to achieve optimum yield for fisheries, many stocks may need annual
3844 assessments. Using an objective process to establish the list of stocks in need of assessment and the
3845 frequency at which those assessments should be conducted would provide important guidance for
3846 NOAA Fisheries to determine how best to allocate federal resources to address regional needs. Thus,
3847 maintaining a transparent and predictable prioritization process is crucial for maximizing the usefulness
3848 of overall assessment capacity to meet national mandates.

3850 **10.3.1 A national protocol for prioritizing stock assessments**

3851 The national prioritization process for stock assessments is based on the concept that it is not necessary
3852 to conduct the most data-rich, ecosystem-linked assessment for every stock every year. That level of
3853 effort is not needed to achieve good management of fisheries. Stable stocks and their fisheries get little
3854 benefit from frequent reassessment. Minor stocks may be of less overall importance relative to the cost
3855 of an assessment, but they can be managed well enough if they occur in a complex with other, well-
3856 assessed and well-managed stocks.

3857 NOAA Fisheries has developed a standard protocol for prioritizing fish stock assessments (Methot,
3858 2015). The purpose of this protocol is to provide an objective framework that will help guide regional
3859 decisions about which stocks require assessment and the level at which those assessments should be
3860 conducted. This framework can be adapted to best suit regional needs and is expected to continue to
3861 evolve. For each region, this national protocol represents one of many potential factors to consider
3862 when determining assessment schedules. However, by using this standardized approach, there will be
3863 an objective basis against which difficult or controversial decisions can be evaluated.

3864 This section, along with Tables 10.2 and 10.3, provide a brief summary of the prioritization protocol.
3865 Section 10.3.2 then expands upon the protocol by describing a process for setting target assessment
3866 levels for each stock. Thus, this document should be used along with Methot (2015) to fully understand
3867 and implement the national prioritization process.

3868 A summary of the five main elements of the prioritization protocol are provided in Table 10.2. NOAA
3869 Fisheries is pursuing full implementation of the prioritization protocol, and this process is a crucial piece
3870 of the NGSa enterprise described in this document. The original process described by Methot (2015)
3871 uses 14 factors (Table 10.3) and combines them using formulas that identify target assessment
3872 frequencies for each stock, as well as scores and ranks that establish relative priorities for stocks
3873 needing assessments. Additionally, the factor concerning the presence of new information can guide
3874 decisions about whether an assessment should be conducted as a routine update, a more involved
3875 benchmark assessment, or addressed separately in a research assessment track (10.5.2).

3876 Overall, regional planners should aim to achieve a feasible workload that addresses the highest
3877 priorities. For example, a mix that includes a few new and/or benchmark assessments and many more
3878 routine updates is likely manageable under current assessment capacity. Conducting assessments at a
3879 higher frequency than is proposed or on stocks that can be managed with minimal baseline monitoring
3880 is unnecessary and represents an inefficient use of assessment and management resources.

3881

3882
3883

Table 10.2. Overview of the national protocol for prioritizing fish stock assessments.

<h2>1. Who</h2>	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• NOAA Fisheries in collaboration with regional experts and managers conduct prioritization in each region
<h2>2. What</h2>	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Determine and include the stocks that require assessments versus those that can be sufficiently managed through baseline monitoring
<h2>3. When</h2>	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Intended to inform the scheduling of annual assessments• Total annual effort required for the prioritization process will decrease after initial implementation
<h2>4. How</h2>	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Regional experts develop scores for 14 factors• 9 factors establish target assessment frequencies• Managers develop weights for 12 factors, including assessment frequency, to reflect regional priorities• Calculate and rank weighted scores for 12 factors• Use results as objective guidance for scheduling assessments

3884
3885

3886 **Table 10.3.** The 14 factors used in NOAA Fisheries' national stock assessment prioritization protocol, 9 of
 3887 which are used for determining target assessment frequency and 12 are used to establish priority for
 3888 assessments.

Factor	Scoring Range	Scoring Based On	Target Assessment Frequency	Determine Annual Priorities
Commercial Fishery Importance	0 to 5	National catch and value databases; calculated as $\log_{10}(1 + \text{landed catch value})$	X	X
Recreational Fishery Importance	0 to 5	Regional recreational fisheries expert opinion	X	X
Importance to Subsistence	0 to 5	Regional fisheries expert opinion	X	X
Rebuilding Status	0 or 1	National stock status database	X	X
Constituent Demand	0 to 5	Regional fisheries expert opinion	X	X
Non-Catch Value	0 to 5	Regional fisheries expert opinion	X	X
Relative Stock Abundance	1 to 5	Most recent spawning biomass and target/threshold levels, as available from SIS database		X
Relative Fishing Mortality	1 to 5	Most recent fishing mortality estimates and limit levels, as available from SIS database		X
Key Role in Ecosystem	1 to 5	Maximum of bottom-up and top-down components; assigned by regional fisheries expert opinion	X	X
Unexpected Changes in Stock Indicators	0 to 5	Regional fisheries expert opinion, where indicators are available		X
New Type of Information	0 to 5	Regional fisheries expert opinion		X
Years Assessment Overdue	0 to 10	Calculated as: year for setting priorities - year of last assessment - target assessment frequency + 1 year		X
Mean Age in Catch	value	Recent average of mean age; direct measurement or assessment estimates	X	
Stock Variability	-1 to +1	Coefficient of variation (CV) for recruitment from assessment estimates	X	

3889
 3890 *SIS = Species Information System

3891 **10.3.2. Stock assessment targets—an expansion of the national prioritization protocol**

3892 As described in *Prioritizing Fish Stock Assessments* (Methot 2015), elements of the national prioritization
 3893 process require further development. In general, there is a need to stress that the prioritization process
 3894 is one of several decision-making tools being used in federal fisheries management, including already
 3895 established regional prioritization processes (the national process can provide additional information).
 3896 To maintain consistency and capitalize on multiple efforts, it is important that the results of other
 3897 national exercises, such as the climate vulnerability analyses recommended in the National Climate
 3898 Science Strategy (Link et al., 2015) be officially included in the stock assessment prioritization process.
 3899 These results can be used to help guide expert opinion in developing scores for several existing factors
 3900 (e.g., “Unexpected changes in stock indicators” and “New type of information”) and in the new steps
 3901 described below.

3902 A primary focus in the prioritization document (Methot 2015) was to describe a process for setting
3903 target assessment frequencies. This process can be summarized as follows:

- 3904 1. Begin with mean age in catch (or proxy)
- 3905 2. Multiply by a regional scaling factor (default = 0.5)
- 3906 3. Adjust for recruitment variability
 - 3907 a. -1 year: Recruitment CV > 0.9
 - 3908 b. +1 year: Recruitment CV < 0.3
- 3909 4. Adjust for fishery importance
 - 3910 a. -1 year: Stock in top 33% of regional fishery importance
 - 3911 b. +1 year: Stock in bottom 33% of regional fishery importance
- 3912 5. Adjust for ecosystem importance
 - 3913 a. -1 year: Stock in top 33% of ecosystem importance
 - 3914 b. +1 year: Stock in bottom 33% of ecosystem importance
- 3915 6. Results will be between 1 and a maximum of 10 years

3916
3917 There is no need to refine the process for setting target assessment frequencies here, but what follows
3918 are several new steps in the prioritization process that serve as guidance for setting target assessment
3919 levels. These new steps were developed because the prioritization document indicated that this aspect
3920 of prioritization would be developed in this revised SAIP. By expanding the process here, stock
3921 assessment prioritization will be aligned with the design of a next generation stock assessment (NGSA)
3922 enterprise.

3923 The assessment level essentially reflects the types of data included in an assessment, so in effect a
3924 target assessment level establishes priorities for data collection and analytical techniques. The Stock
3925 Assessment Classification System (Table 10.1) describes how comprehensive each assessment was
3926 conducted according to five data input categories. Thus, to align the national prioritization protocol with
3927 the NGSA enterprise, the process for setting target assessment levels described next directly
3928 corresponds to the five categories of the classification system. This approach will facilitate a
3929 comprehensive gap analysis that compares current assessment levels to target levels.

3930 The following guidance is proposed to describe how the national prioritization protocol can be used to
3931 establish targets for each of the five stock assessment categories. This guidance serves as an addendum
3932 to Methot (2015) and should be implemented as part of that process. The process described here is for
3933 setting baseline target assessment levels that should be evaluated and considered in the context of
3934 other existing information. For example, the results of other strategic efforts, such as NOAA Fisheries'
3935 Climate Vulnerability Analyses (Link et al., 2015), may be used to adjust baseline targets. Also, decision
3936 analysis tools, such as management strategy evaluations, represent comprehensive approaches that can
3937 be used to evaluate data tradeoffs and determine target assessment levels. When available, the results
3938 of more thorough research and decision analyses should serve a primary role in establishing target
3939 assessment levels. Adjustments to this approach to target setting will become apparent as testing and
3940 implementation develop in each region. However, after a consistent approach is fully implemented, it is

3941 anticipated that targets will remain relatively stable over time. Significant shifts in targets will most likely
3942 be a result of notable changes, such as emerging fisheries, substantial changes in market dynamics,
3943 major ecosystem shifts, or the development of groundbreaking technologies and/or research.

3944 **Target catch level:** Because most stock assessment models assume a high degree of certainty, if not
3945 complete certainty in the amount of fish removed by the fishery, it is important to strive for complete
3946 knowledge of catch when stocks are being assessed with traditional statistical methods. However, when
3947 a stock is subject to little or no fishing, limited catch monitoring may be appropriate. Given these fairly
3948 stark needs regarding catch monitoring, the following describes a simple framework for establishing
3949 target catch levels. The target levels for catch and all following attributes correspond to the levels
3950 described in Table 10.1. Various levels for the factors in Table 10.1 were not considered to be
3951 appropriate targets; thus, there may not be a scenario in the following tables that corresponds to each
3952 level in Table 10.1 (i.e., certain levels are skipped).
3953

Target Catch Level	Stock Scenario
0	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Stocks not caught as target or bycatch in any fishery
2	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Stocks subject to very minimal catch so that fishing-induced mortality most likely does not have measurable effects on stock dynamics
5	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> All other stocks

3954
3955 **Target size and/or age composition level:** Stock assessments that include size or age composition data
3956 produce more complete descriptions of the effects of fishing on fish stocks than assessments that do not
3957 include this information. Also, if natural mortality is estimated within a stock assessment model,
3958 including composition data may improve the ability to estimate this mortality (Magnusson and Hilborn,
3959 2007). However, collecting and processing composition data requires significant allocation of resources,
3960 so it may be unnecessary to include this information in assessments of lower profile stocks. Three of the
3961 four factors that determine target assessment frequency from the prioritization protocol (recruitment
3962 variability, fishery importance, and ecosystem importance) represent metrics that, together, are useful
3963 for determining the importance of age/size composition data. The remaining assessment frequency
3964 factor (mean age in the catch) is not as useful. Thus, to establish target levels for size and/or age
3965 composition data, the following formula is recommended to calculate an importance metric, which
3966 adjusts the target assessment frequency equation from Methot (2015) by excluding the scaled mean age
3967 in the catch:
3968

3969
3970
3971
3972
3973
3974
3975
3976
3977
3978
3979
3980
3981
3982
3983
3984

Calculating Size/Age Importance

1. **Set Size/Age Importance = 0**
2. **Adjust for recruitment variability (using the coefficient of variation – CV)**
 - a. -1 when recruitment CV > 0.9
 - b. +1 when recruitment CV < 0.3
3. **Adjust for Fishery Importance**
 - a. -1 when stock is in top 33% of regional fishery importance
 - b. +1 when stock is in bottom 33% of regional fishery importance
4. **Adjust for Ecosystem Importance**
 - a. -1 when stock is in top 33% of regional ecosystem importance
 - b. +1 when stock is in bottom 33% of regional ecosystem importance

Possible values range from -3 to 3

Target Size/Age Composition Level	Stock Scenario
0	• Stocks that are not a priority for assessments
2	• Stocks with Size/Age Importance > 1
4	• Stocks with Size/Age Importance from -1 to 1
5	• Stocks with Size/Age Importance < -1

3985
3986
3987
3988
3989
3990
3991
3992
3993

Target abundance level: When stock assessments incorporate indices of abundance or biomass, the indices are used as observed changes over time (i.e., input data about abundance or biomass patterns). Thus, assessment results can be biased when observed trends do not reflect actual dynamics, and it has been shown that fishery catch rates can be misleading about abundance (Cooke and Beddington, 1984). In some cases, estimates of absolute abundance should be included in an assessment rather than indices of relative abundance. Further, in the absence of stock assessments, abundance trends serve as useful indicators of stock dynamics for baseline monitoring. The usefulness of abundance data and the limitations associated with fishery catch rates suggest that fishery-independent monitoring of

3994 abundance should be in place for most managed stocks. Thus, in the following scenario we recommend
 3995 high targets for abundance levels, except for stocks not subject to fishing mortality.
 3996

Target Abundance Level	Stock Scenario
0	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Stocks not caught as target or bycatch in any fishery and in the bottom 33% of regional ecosystem importance
3	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Stocks subject to very minimal catch so that fishing-induced mortality most likely does not have measurable effects on stock dynamics
4	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Stocks subject to fishing-induced mortality and not in the top 33% of regional fishery or ecosystem importance
5	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Stocks in the top 33% of regional fishery or ecosystem importance Stocks subject to measureable fishing-induced mortality, but with uncertain catch data (Catch Level < 3) Stocks for which absolute abundance estimates are feasible

3997
 3998 **Target life-history level:** High-quality information about a stock's life history facilitates the ability to
 3999 isolate and evaluate fishing impacts, and improves overall assessment accuracy and precision. The
 4000 highest levels of life-history data should be reserved for stocks that require more complete evaluations
 4001 of the effects of fishing, while stocks with relatively lower importance can be successfully managed with
 4002 less detailed life-history information. The approach to determining size/age composition levels is useful
 4003 here, and in fact, there are strong connections between the role of life history and size/age composition
 4004 data in an assessment model. Therefore, the approach to setting target life-history levels mimics that for
 4005 size/age composition.
 4006

Target Life History Level	Stock Scenario
0	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Stocks that are not a priority for assessments
2	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Stocks with Size/Age Importance > 1

4

- Stocks with Size/Age Importance from -1 to 1

5

- Stocks with Size/Age Importance < -1

4007

4008 **Target ecosystem linkage level:** Determining when and how to directly account for ecosystem dynamics
4009 within a stock assessment is not a straightforward process. In some cases, unexplained drifts in
4010 assessment results (e.g., retrospective biases) indicate that additional factors should be included, but
4011 often there is not sufficient information to identify the specific drivers that were overlooked. In other
4012 cases, research studies have described connections between specific ecosystem dynamics and stock
4013 productivity, but the ability to model and/or forecast the relationship may be limited. Further, it has
4014 been shown in certain scenarios that including ecosystem factors may not always improve the ability to
4015 achieve management objectives (Punt et al., 2013). In many cases, empirically based approaches that
4016 use ecosystem information to guide management decisions may be more appropriate than to directly
4017 include that information in the analytical framework. As mentioned in Chapter 8, decisions on creating
4018 ecosystem linkages in stock assessments are made in the context of the following range of decisions:

4019

4020 1. Based on the stock's value, status, and biology, is there an incentive to expand its assessment to
4021 include ecosystem or socioeconomic factors?

4022 2. Is there evidence to suggest that stock or fishery dynamics are tightly coupled with some
4023 variable ecosystem or socioeconomic feature?

4024 3. Are data available to model this relationship within the assessment framework?

4025 4. Can ecosystem or socioeconomic dynamics be incorporated in a way that maintains a
4026 manageable assessment model?

4027 5. Can the relationship between stock, fishery, and ecosystem or socioeconomic dynamics be
4028 forecasted with at least a moderate degree of certainty?

4029

4030 In general, the standard for including ecosystem information is lowest for Decision 2 above, but raises
4031 through Decision 5, which itself presents a substantial challenge to linking assessments to dynamic
4032 ecosystem features. However, if the answer to Decision 2 is "yes," but there is not sufficient data or
4033 capabilities to meet Decisions 3, 4, or 5, then gaps have been identified, which then may be addressed
4034 to improve the assessment.

4035

4036 Given the complexity of marine systems, the challenges associated with creating and forecasting reliable
4037 mechanistic ecosystem linkages in stock assessments, and variable benefits to incorporating these
4038 linkages into assessments, decision analysis tools (such as MSEs) should be used for evaluating when
4039 and how to expand single-species stock assessment models to include ecosystem features. When
4040 available, the results of these analyses should serve as default advice for guiding target levels for the
4041 ecosystem linkage category. In general, stocks that are good candidates for linking assessments to

ecosystem dynamics include those that serve as key forage, that rely heavily on a specific habitat during one or more life stages, and that are particularly sensitive to fluctuations or shifts in environmental conditions (e.g., temperature). Further, higher profile stocks warrant strong consideration of ecosystem linkages to maximize economic opportunity while being responsive to potential changes or shifts in dynamics, thereby ensuring long-term resiliency. The role of ecosystem variability and change should be at least considered in the development or improvement of every stock assessment. However, in the absence of results from more complete decision analyses, we offer the following approach that uses an Ecosystem Linkage Index (ELI) that builds mainly off the information already being assembled for stock assessment prioritization.

Calculating Ecosystem Linkage Index (ELI)

1. **Set ELI = 0**
2. **Adjust for recruitment variability (using the coefficient of variation – CV)**
 - a. -1 when recruitment CV > 0.9
 - b. +1 when recruitment CV < 0.3
3. **Adjust for Fishery Importance**
 - a. -1 when stock is in top 33% of regional fishery importance
 - b. +1 when stock is in bottom 33% of regional fishery importance
4. **Adjust for Ecosystem Importance**
 - a. -1 when stock is in top 33% of regional ecosystem importance
 - b. +1 when stock is in bottom 33% of regional ecosystem importance
5. **Adjust for Habitat Association**
 - a. -1 if it is clear that a stock relies on a particular habitat niche that is sensitive to ecosystem change during one or more life stages (e.g., anadromous species)
 - b. +1 if stock is thought to easily adapt to changes in physical properties of the ecosystem
6. **Adjust for Model Issues**
 - a. -1 if current assessment model exhibits issues that may be appropriately addressed by including ecosystem dynamics (e.g., retrospective or residual patterns)

Possible values range from -5 to 4

**Target
Ecosystem**

Stock Scenario

Linkage Level	
0	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Stocks that are not a priority for assessments
1	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Stocks with ELI > 2
2	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Stocks with ELI from -3 to 1
4	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Stocks with ELI = -4
5	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Stocks with ELI = -5

4079 ***NOTE: This approach should be used only when more complete research or decision analyses, such**
 4080 **as MSEs, are not available to guide decisions about creating ecosystem linkages.**

4081
 4082 If the ELI suggests a certain stock is a high priority for building ecosystem linkages into the assessment,
 4083 but there is not the capability to do so, then this may indicate a need for additional research, data
 4084 collection, and management strategy evaluations to determine how to address the potential gap.
 4085

4086 **10.4.0 Establishing a right-sized stock assessment enterprise**

4087 The new Stock Assessment Classification System (Table 10.1, Appendix A) and expanded assessment
 4088 prioritization protocol provide a national framework that will inform strategic decisions regarding the
 4089 national stock assessment enterprise. The classification system will be used to identify how stock
 4090 assessments are currently being conducted, and the expanded prioritization protocol will be used to set
 4091 target levels for each assessment. This national framework is meant to enhance, not replace, ongoing
 4092 regional approaches to determining assessment priorities, which involve important collaborations
 4093 among NOAA Fisheries, management organizations, and stakeholders. Discussions among these regional
 4094 expert groups will necessarily remain the primary source of input for setting assessment objectives, but
 4095 the framework described here offers a consistent planning tool that supports discussions about target
 4096 levels. By comparing existing levels to targets, regional stock assessment gaps can be identified and
 4097 prioritized. The majority of these gaps will concern data for assessments, but some will be related to
 4098 research and modeling improvements. Because there are ongoing regional processes and multiple
 4099 strategic efforts underway at NOAA Fisheries (Figure 1.1), the stock assessment gaps identified through
 4100 this process will be evaluated alongside the results of these other efforts.
 4101

4102 The initial work needed to collect the information for each stock is substantial, but after it is collected
 4103 and a data management infrastructure is established, updating and maintaining stock-specific details
 4104 should be fairly straightforward. The intention is that information will be reviewed and updated
 4105 annually, if necessary, to inform near-term assessment scheduling and investments. The process will

4106 likely evolve in the initial years as it is tested and implemented until it produces objective results that
4107 are most useful to regional planners.

4108

4109 **10.5. Standardized approaches**

4110 The process of conducting stock assessments in NOAA Fisheries has developed somewhat independently
4111 by region and management jurisdiction. Also, many assessment processes have expanded in scope over
4112 time to include more data as enhanced data collection programs and research studies have become
4113 available, involved more participants, and included more thorough, independent, scientific reviews of
4114 the assessments. As regional processes developed and expanded, they became associated with varying
4115 degrees of efficiency. In most cases, differences in efficiency across regions can be attributed to regional
4116 attributes, such as the number of states and partners involved in monitoring catches, number and types
4117 of fisheries, and diversity of species and habitats. This variability across regions limits the degree to
4118 which assessments can be standardized. Nevertheless, establishing and using more standardized
4119 approaches may improve efficiency overall and contribute to a more transparent and understood
4120 process.

4121 A high throughput of assessments cannot be accomplished if lead assessment scientists must be
4122 engaged in building input data sets from raw fishery and survey data, and if the assessment methods
4123 themselves are in constant flux. A mature assessment enterprise needs to separate research efforts
4124 where innovations can be freely explored from operational efforts where assessment results are
4125 delivered to fishery managers. Standardized data systems can keep a wide range of indicators updated
4126 and can deliver processed data in a form ready to be used in assessment models. Standardized models
4127 make it easier for less experienced analysts to complete assessments, easier for fuller development of
4128 the model itself, easier for reviewers of model results, and easier to communicate to constituents and
4129 managers. Yet, standardization cannot stand in the way of innovation. There needs to be a parallel track
4130 for conducting research on population dynamics, statistics, and other fields; and a deliberate process by
4131 which good research is transitioned into the operational models. Also, standardized processes should
4132 not be completely rigid so they can accommodate the high diversity of stocks, fisheries, jurisdictions,
4133 and so on.

4134

4135 **10.5.1 Stock assessment analytical tools**

4136 Over the past several decades, the analytical tools and approaches used in fishery stock assessments
4137 have evolved rapidly. These advances have been a benefit to sustainable fisheries management, and
4138 growth in this field will only continue. Development of stock assessment software and tools, including
4139 those for data processing, running assessment models, and developing forecasts, are typically
4140 performed by stock assessment and fishery scientists (as opposed to software developers). It is crucial
4141 that assessment scientists be involved in these developments, because not only do they need complete
4142 conceptual and practical understanding of the tools, they also have the knowledge necessary to design

4143 tools that are applicable in specific assessment scenarios. However, because fishery assessment and
4144 management systems have developed according to a regional design, many regions have produced tools
4145 with very similar features. NOAA Fisheries has numerous scientists with a wide variety of expertise and
4146 capabilities for developing assessment tools, and development often may draw from a vast professional
4147 network that extends outside NOAA. With a capacity at this scale, tremendous efficiency could be
4148 gained by a unified, community approach to sharing expertise and developing assessment tools. This
4149 approach would also facilitate increased use of fewer standard tools, which would improve efficiency in
4150 both conducting analyses and in understanding and reviewing the assessments. Additionally, partnering
4151 with professional software developers could facilitate enhanced functionality, maintenance, stability,
4152 and also free up time for NOAA scientists to engage in important assessment and fishery-related
4153 research projects. The recommendations presented in Box 10.1 relate to the development, provision,
4154 and use of stock assessment analytical tools.

4155
4156 ***Box 10.1. Recommendations for Development of Analytical
Tools***

- 4157
- 4158 **1. Provide national coordination of stock assessment tools and use professional software development practices.**
 - 4159 **2. Develop tools in community and cloud-based environments to capitalize on diverse expertise from a variety of collaborators.**
 - 4160 **3. Use standardized, tested, verified, and fully documented tools in operational assessments to facilitate efficient and well-understood analyses.**
 - 4161 **4. Increase opportunities for NOAA scientists to conduct research related to assessment analyses.**
- 4162
4163
4164
4165

4166 **10.5.2 The stock assessment process**

4167 Fishery stock assessments represent an applied operational science that provides fundamental
4168 information to fishery managers for setting harvest regulations. Industries, small businesses, and
4169 individuals plan around these management decisions; thus, it is imperative that the scientific advice be
4170 timely, transparent, and reliable. Further, to facilitate planning, many stakeholders value long-term
4171 stability in regulations. Given the role of stock assessments in fishery management, it is important that
4172 consistent, well understood, and thoroughly reviewed methods be used to conduct operational
4173 assessments. The process by which assessments are conducted currently varies by region, which is
4174 suitable given that fisheries management is an inherently regional process. However, some assessment
4175 processes can further be improved in regard to one or more of the preferred qualities (timeliness,
4176 transparency, and/or stability).

4177
 4178 The framework for conducting and reviewing stock assessments described in Table 10.4 is
 4179 recommended as a general structure for regions to use and adapt according to their needs. The driving
 4180 concept behind this framework is to provide a streamlined approach to updating scientific advice for
 4181 managers using *operational assessments*. Major changes to model configurations, data sources, etc.
 4182 would then be evaluated in *research assessments* that do not produce the scientific advice that is being
 4183 used for management. The operational assessments then use methods that have already been
 4184 independently reviewed. These assessments can be applied to develop scientific advice for fishery
 4185 managers without the additional scrutiny of the methods and would be reviewed with a focus on the
 4186 application of those methods. The research assessments are evaluated for their usefulness to consider
 4187 in future operational assessments.

4188
 4189 **Table 10.4.** Recommended process for conducting operational and research stock assessments.

	Operational Assessment	Research Assessment
Preparation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Stocks selected for assessment based on results of national assessment prioritization protocol. Streamlined, integrated data systems provide efficient access to data in formats needed for assessments and are publicly accessible and transparent to facilitate additional investigations. General tools provide timely public access to data summaries and figures. The suite of analytical tools used in the assessment is accessible, documented, tested, and independently reviewed prior to use. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Occur as needed to improve operational assessments. Scoped to evaluate, test, document, and review potential changes to operational assessments (not to provide advice to managers). Connected to research recommendations from previous operational assessment; evaluated soon after completion to prioritize importance and feasibility of addressing recommendations in a research assessment. Broad interdisciplinary engagement upfront is encouraged so a range of expertise can be used to inform assessment improvements. Stakeholder involvement is also encouraged so outside data, analyses, and ideas can be evaluated, and trust in potential changes is built from the beginning.
Conduct	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Designated analysts use a suite of previously reviewed procedures and data sets. Assessment model or suite of models configured according to previously accepted specifications. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> New procedures, data sets, and configurations are made available to address issues with operational assessments and/or make general improvements. The scope of improvements may include ecosystem and socioeconomic drivers and considerations, and

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Minor changes to previous approaches are acceptable, especially to account for issues that may arise as a result of additional years of data. • A full exploration of model sensitivity is not necessary as that should have been conducted during the research assessment (the accepted suite of models is used to characterize observational and structural uncertainties). • Primary objectives are to update stock abundance forecast and provide probability distributions of future catch based on the harvest control rule and characterize recent and projected overfishing and overfished statuses. 	<p>management strategy evaluations represent one framework recommended for use in these investigations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Improvements may include harvest policy investigations and/or use of simpler methods to achieve management objectives and/or use as interim approaches between more involved assessments. • Research assessments should be applied to particular stocks and evaluated against the recent operational assessment (using the actual assessment data at some point) to determine the influence of the proposed improvements (both long-term and short-term effects should be evaluated). • For research assessments to be accepted into the next operational assessment there must be a long-term commitment to collect and provide the accepted data and methods.
<p>Documentation and Review</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Documentation of results should be concise with information relevant for fishery management summarized clearly upfront. • Analytical techniques should be summarized very briefly with reference to original descriptions. • Data sources can also be referenced and do not need full descriptions, just depiction of major trends. • Uncertainty should be characterized for all results, and decision tables should be used to summarize uncertainty and risk associated with a range of management decisions. • Anomalies, concerns, and research recommendations documented for future consideration. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • New procedures, data, and findings with application to particular stocks should be fully documented to support use and serve as reference in future operational assessments. • Documentation may be prepared as an assessment report, technical memorandum, and/or peer-reviewed publication equal to the scope and novelty of changes. • Unresolved issues and additional research recommendations should be documented to inform future research assessments. • Independent, comprehensive review is conducted to provide objective evaluation of proposed changes. • Review panels may include some regional expertise, but should be independent of analysts and should include fully external reviewers (such as through the CIE) equal to the degree of controversy and novelty of the proposed changes.

- Review is streamlined for quality assurance by a standing committee of regional experts.
- Review is not intended to make harvest-level recommendations, determine stock status, or declare whether the best scientific information available was used, but rather to evaluate whether the previously approved approach was applied correctly.
- If the new application of an operational assessment is not deemed appropriate for management, a default approach to generating catch advice should be established and agreed to upfront.
- Review panels should focus on the scientific merits and feasibility of implementing proposed changes relative to current operational assessments with less of a focus on interpretations, applications, and consequences of assessment results.
- Review panels should not expect all issues to be resolved and therefore should not be asked to accept/reject the entire assessment, but rather should evaluate each component to facilitate future use of one or more proposed changes.
- Major changes identified by review panels should not be expected to be addressed immediately but should be considered as additional research recommendations.

4190

4191

4192 Completion of a technically accurate assessment is not the final step of an effective assessment. The
4193 results must be communicated to a diverse range of constituents to achieve success.

4194 Because the operational assessment process is intended to be as efficient as possible, there is a need for
4195 standardized approaches to documentation. Yet, to trust the results, affected constituents must get
4196 enough information about the assessment and the data and methods supporting it. Fishery managers
4197 also must receive assessment products that clearly describe the risks and benefits of possible
4198 controversial decisions. Fellow scientists must have access to detailed results in order to conduct meta-
4199 analyses and other comparative studies. Deliberate development of the right communication product
4200 for each audience is needed. A succinct and standard reporting template can reduce the time required
4201 for compiling results and facilitate access of results to fishery managers and other interested parties, not
4202 just regionally, but nationally as well. Further, by using a standardized template, the primary assessment
4203 results can be compared and evaluated across stocks. This step may be particularly important for
4204 making management decisions within a fishery management plan that contains multiple stocks.
4205 Managers and stakeholders may also benefit from easy access to other information and analyses, not
4206 just the primary stock assessment results (e.g., the prioritization results and stock-specific targets
4207 described previously, summaries of important stock indicators, and climate vulnerability analyses).
4208 Appendix B provides a recommended template (completed with a case study) that attempts to
4209 summarize the results of an operational stock assessment as well as additional information. This
4210 template attempts to provide brief organized access to the primary information for which most
4211 assessments are accessed, and its use would provide consistent national representation of NOAA
4212 Fisheries' stock assessment results.

4213

4214 Finally, regardless of whether operational or research assessments are conducted, scientific products
4215 used to support fishery management should have a level of review that corresponds with the degree of
4216 novelty of the work, and the controversy and importance of the resulting management action. Extensive
4217 review processes have been developed in all regions (Chapter 6), and some have become so intensive
4218 that the throughput of assessments is constrained. Effective certification that the best scientific
4219 products are being used can be attained with a modified review approach built around the separation of
4220 research from operations and the use of standardized data and methods. The most extensive and
4221 intensive review involving highly independent external reviewers should be focused on the research
4222 products that are designing and developing new methods. Here the alternative experiences and
4223 backgrounds of the external reviewers can make the greatest contribution to improved methods. Then,
4224 application of these accepted standardized methods to the most recent standardized data can receive
4225 sufficient quality assurance when reviewed by knowledgeable regional experts, including council's
4226 Scientific and Statistical Committees, who have good knowledge of regional data sources and
4227 assessments for other stocks in that region.

4228
4229 Whether comprehensive and fully independent, or streamlined through standing committees, reviews
4230 are most beneficial when guided by clear terms of reference (ToR). These terms should ensure that
4231 reviews focus on the science conducted to support fisheries management given the information
4232 available at the time. Although reviewers can provide important research recommendations, those
4233 recommendations should be reserved for future research assessments, and current reviews should not
4234 be contingent on incorporation of those recommendations. Further, it is not appropriate for review
4235 panels to perform management actions, such as determining stock status, harvest recommendations, or
4236 formal declarations about the assessment representing the best scientific information available. The
4237 focus of the review is to determine which, if any, major issues may limit the usefulness of the
4238 assessment for fishery managers relative to what is already available. Along those lines, reviews should
4239 be conducted in a way that facilitates use of components of the stock assessment, rather than a simple
4240 accept/reject of the entire package. To promote an effective and efficient review of operational stock
4241 assessments, Box 10.2 includes a suite of generic statements that are recommended for inclusion in
4242 review terms of reference. These statements intend to help focus reviews so that they are most helpful
4243 to the assessment–management process. For research assessments, there is less of a need to constrain
4244 the peer review ToR because the scope of potential changes to an assessment are broad and can be
4245 evaluated in a variety of ways. However, it should be very clear in ToR for research assessments that the
4246 review is focused on the proposed changes and whether they would result in an improved operational
4247 stock assessment.

4248

4249 **10.6. Conclusions**

4250 In this chapter, a number of process-oriented changes are recommended that may affect NOAA
4251 Fisheries' stock assessment programs as well as our fishery management partners and stakeholders.
4252 These recommendations have been carefully vetted with the overall goal of creating a timelier, more

4253 efficient, and more effective stock assessment enterprise. Although adoption of these recommendations
4254 may require an investment of time and resources from NOAA Fisheries and our partners, the long-term
4255 gains will offset the short-term costs.
4256
4257

4258
4259
4260
4261
4262
4263
4264
4265
4266
4267
4268
4269
4270
4271
4272
4273
4274
4275
4276
4277
4278
4279
4280

Box 10.2. Recommended statements to include in operational stock assessment review terms of reference (ToR)

- Determine, according to the best of your knowledge, if all data considered for use in the stock assessment were made available with sufficient time to review and evaluate their utility to the assessment. If not, please explain.
- Of the data considered for inclusion in the assessment, determine if final decisions on inclusion/exclusion of particular data were appropriate and justified. If not, please explain.
- Determine whether the final data that were included in the stock assessment were prepared and processed appropriately, and potential sources of bias were addressed and/or documented appropriately. If not, please explain.
- Given the data selected for use in the assessment, determine if the methods used to analyze those data and characterize uncertainty were appropriate and sufficient for accomplishing the following:
(For each category, if you feel the methods were not appropriate or if previous analyses are more appropriate, please explain.)
 - Estimating biological reference points related to stock size
 - Estimating biological reference points related to fishing intensity
 - Estimating stock size in the final assessment year
 - Estimating fishing intensity in the final assessment year
 - Estimating an historical time series of stock size
 - Estimating an historical time series of fishing intensity
- If applicable, please review the methods used for forecasting, including the characterization of uncertainty, to determine whether they were appropriate and sufficient for the following:
(For each category, if you feel the methods were not appropriate or if previous analyses are more appropriate, please explain.)
 - Developing harvest recommendations for the next 1–4 years
 - Developing harvest recommendations beyond 4 years
 - Projecting biomass relative to corresponding biological reference point(s)
 - Projecting fishing intensity relative to corresponding biological reference point(s)

*Note: The structure of ToR in review of research stock assessments should be less constrained than ToR for operational assessments, and should be designed to focus the review on any changes to the assessment that are being proposed and whether these changes would likely improve the next operational assessment.

4281 **References**

4282 Link, J. S., R. Griffis, and S. Busch (eds). 2015. NOAA Fisheries Climate Science Strategy. NOAA Tech.
4283 Memo. NMFS-F/SPO-155, 70p.

4284 Magnusson, A., and R. Hilborn. 2007. What makes fisheries data informative? Fish Fish. 8:337–358.
4285 <https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1467-2979.2007.00258.x>

4286

4287 Methot, Richard D. Jr. (ed.). 2015. Prioritizing fish stock assessments. NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-F/SPO-
4288 152, 31 p.

4289

4290

4291 **SECTION IV. SUMMARY,**
4292 **RECOMMENDATIONS, AND**
4293 **IMPLEMENTATION**

4294

4295

4296 PLACEHOLDER, TO BE COMPLETED

4297

4298

Acronyms

4299	ABC – Acceptable Biological Catch	4337	LMRCSC – Living Marine Resources Cooperative
4300	ACLs – Annual Catch Limits	4338	Science Center
4301	ADMB – Auto Differentiated Model Builder	4339	MAFMC – Mid-Atlantic Fishery Management
4302	AFSC – Alaska Fisheries Science Center	4340	Council
4303	AKFIN – Alaska Fisheries Information Network	4341	MARMAP – Marine Resource Monitoring and
4304	AKRO – Alaska Regional Office	4342	Assessment Program
4305	ASMFC – Atlantic States Marine Fisheries	4343	MMPA – Marine Mammal Protection Act
4306	Commission	4344	MREP – Marine Resource Education Program
4307	BSIA – Best Scientific Information Available	4345	MRFSS – Marine Recreational Fisheries
4308	CESUs – Cooperative Ecosystem Studies Units	4346	Statistics Survey
4309	CFMC – Caribbean Fisheries Management	4347	MRIP – Marine Recreation Information Program
4310	Council	4348	MSA – Magnuson-Stevens Act
4311	CIE – Center for Independent Experts	4349	MSE – Management Strategy Evaluation
4312	CIs – Cooperative Institutes	4350	MSY – Maximum Sustainable Yield
4313	CPUE – Catch Per Unit Effort	4351	NCSS – NOAA Fisheries Climate Science Strategy
4314	CWA – Clean Water Act	4352	NEAMAP – Northeast Area Monitoring and
4315	CZMA – Coastal Zone Management Act	4353	Assessment Program (Note: This is used twice,
4316	EBFM – Ecosystem-based Fisheries	4354	page 21 and 23, and both times the full thing
4317	Management	4355	was spelled out as well)
4318	ELI – Ecosystem Linkage Index	4356	NEFMC – Northeast Fisheries Management
4319	EM/ER – Electronic Monitoring and Electronic	4357	Council
4320	Reporting	4358	NEFSC – Northeast Fisheries Science Center
4321	ESA – Endangered Species Act	4359	NEPA – National Environmental Policy Act
4322	FIS – Fisheries Information System	4360	NGSA – Next Generation Stock Assessment
4323	FMC – Fisheries Management Council	4361	NPFMC – North Pacific Fisheries Management
4324	FMO – Fisheries Management Organization	4362	Council
4325	FO – Fisheries Organization	4363	NRC – National Research Council
4326	FSC – Fisheries Science Center	4364	NRCC – Northeast Regional Coordinating
4327	FSSI – Fish Stock Sustainability Index	4365	Council
4328	GARFO – Greater Atlantic Regional Fisheries	4366	NS1 – National Standard 1
4329	Office	4367	NWFSC – Northwest Fisheries Science Center
4330	GMFMC – Gulf of Mexico Fisheries	4368	OFL – Overfishing Level
4331	Management Council *****	4369	PFMC – Pacific Fishery Management Council
4332	HAIP – Habitat Assessment Improvement Plan	4370	PIFSC – Pacific Islands Fisheries Science Center
4333	HMS – Highly Migratory Species	4371	PIRO – Pacific Islands Regional Office
4334	IEAs – Integrated ecosystem assessments	4372	PRSAIP – Protected Resources Stock
4335	IUU – Illegal, Unregulated, and Unreported	4373	Assessment Improvement Plan
4336	fishing		

4374 **QUEST** – Quantitative Ecology and
4375 Socioeconomics Training Program
4376 **RFMOs**- Regional Fishery Management
4377 Organizations
4378 **RO** – Regional Office
4379 **RTR** – Research Training and Recruitment
4380 **SAFE** – Stock Assessment and Fishery Evaluation
4381 **SAFMC** – Southeast Atlantic Fishery
4382 Management Council
4383 **SAIP** – Stock Assessment Improvement Plan
4384 **SAM** – State-space Assessment Model
4385 **SAW/SARC** – Stock Assessment
4386 Workshop/Stock Assessment Review
4387 Committee
4388 **SCAA** – Statistical Catch-At-Age
4389 **SCAL** – Statistical Catch-At-Length
4390 **SEDAR** – Southeast Data, Assessment, and
4391 Review
4392 **SEFIS** – Southeast Fishery Independent Survey
4393 **SEFSC** – Southeast Fisheries Science Center
4394 **SERO** – Southeast Regional Office
4395 **SSC** – Scientific and Statistical Committee
4396 **STAR** – Stock Assessment Review
4397 **SWFSC** – Southwest Fisheries Science Center
4398 **TMB** – Template Model Builder
4399 **ToR** – Terms of Reference
4400 **UNOLS** – University National Oceanographic
4401 Laboratory System
4402 **VPA** – Virtual Population Analysis
4403 **WCR** – West Coast Region
4404 **WPFMC** – Western Pacific Fishery Management
4405 Council
4406 **WPSAR** – Western Pacific Stock Assessment
4407 Review

4408 **Appendix A. NOAA Fisheries' Stock Assessment Classification System**

Attribute	Level					
	0	1	2	3	4	5
Catch	No quantitative catch data	Some catch data, but major gaps for some fishery sectors or for historical periods such that their use in assessments is not supported	Enough catch data establish magnitude of catch and trends in catch for a major fishery sector in order to apply a data-limited assessment method. This includes fisheries that are closed and it is known that negligible catch is occurring	Catch data is generally available for all fishery sectors to support quantitative stock assessment, but some gaps exist such as low observer coverage, high levels of self-reported catch, weak information on discard mortality	No data gaps substantially impede assessment, but catch is not without uncertainty (e.g., recreational catches estimated from surveys)	Very complete knowledge of total catch
Size and/or age composition	No composition data collected	Some size or age composition data has been collected, but major gaps in coverage, not used in assessment, or historically preclude use in assessments	Enough size or age composition data has been collected to enable data-limited assessment approaches	Enough size or age composition data is collected over a sufficient time series to be informative in age/size structured assessment models	Enough age composition data has been collected over a sufficient time series to enable assessments methods that need age composition data from the fishery	Very complete age and size composition data, including, as needed on stock-specific basis, knowledge of ageing precision, spatial patterns or other issues

Abundance	No indicator of stock abundance or trend in stock abundance over time	Fishery-dependent catch rates (CPUE) are available, but high uncertainty about their standardization over time; or expert opinion on degree of stock depletion over time	Fishery-dependent catch rates (CPUE) are sufficiently standardized to enable their use in full assessments	Limited fishery-independent survey(s) provide estimates of relative abundance; however, the temporal or spatial coverage of the stock is limited or the sampling variability is high	Complete fishery-independent survey(s) provide estimates of relative abundance, and the survey(s) cover a large proportion of the spatial extent of the stock with several years of tracking at a level of precision that supports assessments	Calibrated fishery-independent survey(s) or tag-recapture provide estimates of absolute abundance
Life history	No life history data	Estimates of most life history factors not based on empirical data; instead derived using proxies, meta-analyses, borrowed from other species, or without scientific basis	Estimates of some life history factors based on stock-specific empirical data, but at least one derived using life history proxies, meta-analyses, borrowed from other species, or without scientific basis. Generally supports data-poor assessments that use life history information	Estimates of most life history factors based on stock-specific empirical data	Data are sufficient to track changes over time in at least growth	No major gaps in life history knowledge, including detailed stock structure, spatial and temporal patterns in natural mortality, growth, and reproductive biology

<p>Ecosystem linkage</p>	<p>No linkage to ecosystem dynamic or consideration of ecosystem properties (environment, climate, habitat, predator-prey, etc.) in configuring the assessment (i.e., equilibrium conditions assumed for ecosystem)</p>	<p>Ecosystem-based hypotheses inform the assessment model structure (e.g., defining the stock boundaries and/or spatial or temporal features) and/or are used for processing assessment inputs (e.g., abundance index), but no explicit linkage to any ecosystem drivers (environment, climate, habitat, predator-prey, etc.)</p>	<p>The assessment includes some form of variability or effect to explicitly account for unidentified ecosystem dynamic(s) (e.g., time/space "regimes", random variation, or other approaches to changing features without direct inclusion of ecosystem data)</p>	<p>One or more assessment features is linked to a dynamic (i.e., data) from at least one of the following categories: environment, climate, habitat, predator-prey data (e.g., covariate)</p>	<p>The assessment model is linked to at least one ecosystem dynamic, and one or more process studies directly support the manner in which environmental, climate, habitat, and/or predator-prey dynamics are incorporated (e.g., consumption rates measured and covariate informed by results)</p>	<p>The assessment approach is configured to be coupled or linked with an ecosystem process (e.g., multispecies, coupled biophysical, climate-linked models)</p>
---------------------------------	---	---	---	---	--	---